

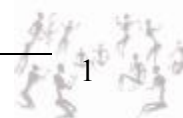
HESSEQUA
Integrated
Development Plan
Final Document
2007 - 2012

compiled by:
CV Schroeder
Deputy Municipal Manager



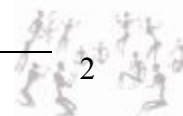
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword by Executive Mayor - From local government to local governance! ...	5
Introduction by Deputy Municipal Manager, Claude V Schroeder - Hessequa 2 nd Generation IDP, a True People's Document!	7
SECTION A: EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	9
BACKGROUND INFORMATION	9
1.1 Introduction	9
The IDP is guided by the vision for Hessequa	9
1.2 Characteristics of the Hessequa region	9
2. THE SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT OF HESSEQUA.....	11
Hessequa's Mission	11
Hessequa's Strategic IDP Objectives	12
3. HOW WILL HESSEQUA DELIVER ON SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT.....	13
3.1 Economic development	13
3.2 Social development.....	16
3.3 Sustainable environmental utilisation.....	17
3.4 Infrastructure and service delivery	19
SECTION B: SECOND GENERATION IDP	22
CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION	22
CHAPTER 2: KEY ELEMENTS OF A CREDIBLE IDP	24
CHAPTER 3: INTER-GOVERNMENTAL PLANNING CONTEXT.....	24
3.1. Key Planning Instruments for Consideration	24
3.2. The Instruments in Perspective and Their Convergence.....	25
CHAPTER 4: SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT	37
CHAPER 5: HISTORY, DEMOGRAPHICS AND WARD ANALYSIS.....	38
5.1. OUR HISTORY	38
5.2.DEMOGRAPHICS.....	39
5.3. WARD ANALYSIS: WARD COUNCILLORS AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT WORKERS	42
5.3.1.Ward 1	42
5.3.2.Ward 2.....	48
5.3.3.Ward 3.....	52
5.3.4.Ward 4.....	57



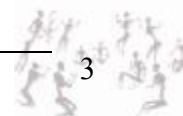


5.3.5. Ward 5.....	62
5.3.6. Ward 6.....	66
5.3.7. Ward 7.....	70
5.3.8. WARD 8.....	78
CHAPTER 6: SECTOR ANALYSIS.....	85
6.1.ECONOMY.....	85
6.2. BASIC INFRASTRUCTURE.....	95
6.3. HOUSING.....	111
6.4. SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME.....	113
CHAPTER 7: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK : SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS.....	115
7.1.TERRESTRIAL AQUATIC THREATS AND CHALLENGES.....	115
7.2. PRIORITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT ISSUES WITHIN HESSEQUA.....	121
CHAPTER 8: WARD BASED ANALYSIS.....	123
8.1.Well-being of Hessequa's Wards.....	123
8.3 DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES.....	125
8.3.1 WARD COMMITTEE 1.....	125
8.3.2 WARD COMMITTEE 2.....	130
8.3.3. WARD COMMITTEE 3.....	132
8.3.4 WARD COMMITTEE 4.....	133
8.3.5. WARD COMMITTEE 5.....	135
8.3.6. WARD COMMITTEE 6.....	139
SECTION C: LONG TERM STRATEGIC FOCUS.....	142
CHAPTER 10: PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PROCESS.....	142
MUNICIPAL IMBIZO'S.....	143
CHAPTER 11: ECONOMY.....	144
11.1 Economic vision.....	144
11.2 Guiding principles.....	144
11.3 Broad economic goals.....	144
11.4 Strategic initiatives.....	144
11.5 Critical economic issues.....	145
CHAPTER 12: INFRASTRUCTURE.....	146
STRATEGIC FOCUS.....	146
12.1. Water.....	146
12.2. Sewerage.....	148
12.3. Roads and Transport.....	149
12.4. Storm water.....	149
12.5. Electricity.....	150





12.6. Solid Waste.....	150
CHAPTER 13: HOUSING	151
13.1. Strategies.....	151
13.2. Community participation	151
13.3. Alignment.....	151
13.4. Strategising housing projects.....	151
CHAPTER 14: SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT	152
14.1. Broad Strategic Intervention	152
14.2. Our Social Development Vision and Mission.....	152
14.3. Objectives	153
14.4. Priorities.....	153
14.5. Conclusion.....	154
CHAPTER 15: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK : SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS.....	154
15.1. PREFERRED OUTCOMES OF FRAMEWORK PLAN.....	154
15.2. CHARACTERISTICS OF SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS	155
15.3. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN IDP AND SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT	155
15.4. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT OBJECTIVES FOR HESSEQUA	155
15.5. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT STRATEGIES FOR HESSEQUA	156
15.6. PRINCIPLES TO ACHIEVE SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS	156
CHAPTER 16: Hessequa Environmental Management and Sustainable Development Framework.....	158
16.1 Empowering Individuals and Institutions	158
16.2 Defining the Planning Region	159
16.3 Delineating the Planning Region	159
16.4 Identifying Key Stakeholders	159
16.5 Benchmark Assessment of Research Gaps	159
16.6 Identify and Assess Land use.....	160
16.7 Promote Sustainable Nature-based Tourism.....	160
16.8 Develop a Model of Land Management.....	161
16.9 Develop an Implementation Strategy	161
16.10 Monitor, Evaluate and Ensure Landscape Management	162
CHAPTER 17: STRATEGIC LONG TERM VISION.....	163
17.1. WHAT INFORMS HESSEQUA VISION.....	163
17.2. LONG TERM VISION MISSION AND OBJECTIVES	164
17.3. OUR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS.....	165
17.4. OUR STRATEGIC IDP OBJECTIVES.....	166





17.5. OUR PLEDGE	166
17.6. ALIGNMENT OF PLANNING INITIATIVES.....	167
17.7. STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS BY OBJECTIVE, CLUSTER AND FOCUS AREA	168
Administration and Finance	168
Socio-Economic	172
Social Development.....	181
Planning and Environment	184
Infrastructure.....	188
Socio-Economic Development	208
CHAPTER 18: CONCLUDING REMARKS.....	212
Conclusion and remarks: Deputy Mayor.....	212
ANNEXURE	213
SUMMARY OF STATE OF THE NATION ADDRESS OF THE PRESIDENT OF SOUTH AFRICA, THABO MBEKI: JOINT SITTING OF PARLIAMENT: 9 FEBRUARY 2007	213
State of the Province Address: Intensifying the Fight against Poverty: An Action Plan for Shared Growth be Mr E Rasool, Premier of the Western Cape.	223





From Local Government to Local Governance!

This 2nd generation Hessequa IDP is the result of a robust public- and stakeholder participation process and is truly people-driven. It has been marked by proven citizen responsiveness and reaction, constant feed back, evaluation by stakeholders through a participative process in wards as well as sector engagements. By taking a developmental approach the 2nd generation Hessequa IDP process has been marked by strong leadership from the Mayoral Committee and Councilors, our Municipal Management team as well as the community development workers (CDW's).



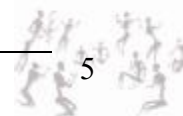
The final IDP document indicates the vibrancy and goodwill with which the ward committees, advisory committees and citizens of the Hessequa has responded to the leadership provided by Councillors as well as the administration. Your energy, commitment and passion assisted us in constructing a living document. I would like to take this opportunity to thank and applaud each and every one of you, for your unselfish contribution to this important process and commitment to the future of our children.

This historic document poses a range of challenges to Councillors, officials and citizens, it forces us as local communities to rethink the way we are organised and governed. Not just the Municipality as an institution, also the very local populace are challenged to find new ways to sustain their livelihoods, protect their **environments**, improve their personal safety and tackle poverty.

Nearly all the questions that have come up at most of our IDP public participation sessions relate around change and whether we as communities, councillors and officials are managing it properly. Pieterse (2000:1) warns us not to panic or to adopt a business as usual approach but to see it as a "... opportunity to fundamentally rethink how we function as local authorities and how we intend to develop our localities". Most of us are daunted by the speed at which change are taking place, especially because it exposes our outdated management approaches, but also maybe we are frightened by the freedom, transparency and off cause the shift in ownership it may bring. The outstanding features of change, in my view, is that it's complex and dynamic, because of this we adopted a control mentality in the past, rather than managing change properly.

One example is that of how young people from across the Hessequa municipality made their voices heard at the Hessequa IDP Youth Summit on critical issues such as HIV/AIDS, skills development, job creation and drug and alcohol abuse. Our IDP process has proofed that, participation is about creating an environment in which people can involve themselves directly in decision-making processes and directly in the planning and implementation of development.

Based on the positive spirit I experienced throughout our robust IDP public participation process, I fundamentally believe that we can eradicate the past development legacy, we can maximise social development and economic growth, we can pursue integration and co-ordination, we can play a central role in promoting local democracy and we can create conditions for local solutions to development challenges.





To ensure that the Hessequa Municipality is not only there for now, but also for the future, we need to build a common purpose to find local solutions for increased sustainability. In the final analysis I think you will agree with me and writers such as Visser (2001: 20) that South Africa's '...democracy hinges on dismantling the resource distributional legacies of the apartheid era'. The reconstruction of state institutions to reorient and redirect resources and capacity at all levels of government, with a specific focus on local government, is fundamental. Or as Minister Mufamadi put it at the opening of the National Conference on Ward Committees:" Not only should wards become geo-political spaces for development intervention, ordinary people on the ground should see the dividends of democracy and experience a better life!"

A particular word of appreciation to our Deputy Municipal Manager, Claude Schroeder, for the passionate way in which he ensured that our IDP process culminate in a high quality document, of which all of us can be proud. I would further like to thank the EDEN District Municipality, particularly the municipal manager MC Botha, for their assistance and support, in assisting us to put a credible 2nd generation Hessequa IDP on the table. Through their district-wide socio-economic survey done in 2006, this 2nd generation Hessequa IDP includes a credible **socio-economic analysis** of our reality, with a particular focus on our eight wards.

Ons het dus nou 'n kwaliteit, lang termyn strategiese plan wat wyks- en gemeenskapsgebaseerd is en nie net die uitdagings vd Hessequa Munisipaliteit uitspel nie, maar ook vir regering as geheel. Die basis is ook nou gele vir 'n multi-jaar begroting wat die armes prioritiseer en wat die ontwikkelings rol vd munisipaliteit aktiveer, en aan senior bestuur die regte vlakke van delegasie gee om hulle finansiële verantwoordelikhede na te kom. Die derde en sekerlik belangrikste komponent wat ons benodig om beide die plan en die begroting te maak werk is die mense van die Hessequa. Ek nooi u dus hiermee om saam met die Raad en die administrasie moue op te rol en hande te vat in die bou van 'n verenigde front gemik op die uitwissing van armoede en werkloosheid en die daarstelling van volhoubare ontwikkeling wat ons mense eerste stel!

Ek dank u! Enkosi!

Chris Taute
Executive Mayor





Hessequa 2nd Generation IDP, a True People's Document!

On 16 October 2006 the Department of Local Government and Housing, Western Cape issued a document called "The ABC of Municipal Integrated Development Planning (IDP)". This was to assist municipalities in developing credible 2nd generation IDP's. The document is based on the "Credible IDP Framework" developed by the National Department of Provincial and Local Government (DPLG). This Framework was quite challenging to us and I believe to municipalities across the country, because it goes beyond just testing IDP, but reflects on the performance of municipalities as a whole. For municipalities to put credible IDP's on the table it needs to meet five criteria, including: Clear Analysis; Basic Services and Infrastructure delivery; Community involvement; Institutional delivery capacity and Alignment with national/provincial government and municipality.



It is within this context that the Hessequa Municipality embarked on its 2nd generation Integrated Development Plan (IDP) process. Our process has been based on this progressive planning rationale and it has been locked on a simple legislative framework to ensure consistence and an enhanced quality of the IDP.

Over the last few months the Hessequa Municipality has taken hands with its communities and social partners and went through a robust process to put a credible, 2nd generation IDP in place. Some of the characteristics of the Hessequa 2nd generation IDP include:

- This 2nd generation Hessequa IDP is the result of a robust public- and stakeholder participation process and is truly people-driven. It has been marked by proven citizen responsiveness and reaction, constant feed back, evaluation by stakeholders through a participative process in wards as well as sector engagements. By taking a developmental approach the 2nd generation Hessequa IDP process has been marked by strong leadership, both from the Mayor and Councillors, the Municipal Management team as well as the community development workers (CDW's).
- With the assistance of the EDEN District Municipality, through their district-wide socio-economic survey done in 2006, this 2nd generation Hessequa IDP includes a credible **socio-economic analysis** of our reality, with a particular focus on our eight wards. In our analysis we were able to touch on demography, access to services, poverty, labour market, economic activity, grant dependency, etc.
- The 2nd generation Hessequa IDP is deliberately set within the context of the fundamentals of sustainable development and contains a clear **long term strategy** based on rigorous socio-economic analysis, linking it to strategy and programmes / projects.
- Through robust engagements between Council, management and ward committees, culminating in a March 2007 Witsand Bosberaad, the 2nd generation Hessequa IDP contains a **well-resourced plan**
- Throughout the 2nd generation IDP process a high premium has been put on **alignment** with national and provincial policies and planning. Whilst some Departments have provided hands on support, others did not respond to our requests for input into the process. The 2nd generation Hessequa IDP gives cognizance to the relevant organs of state and their respective plans. The IDP is





strategically and aligned with all plans in place by the different government departments with resource allocations at their respective levels. We've done that because the powers and functions of the different spheres of government are key tools to avert duplication of initiatives and the funding related to those initiatives.

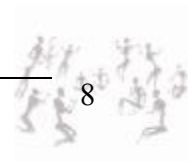
Our 2nd generation IDP emphasized a new form of public participation, one in which participation becomes more than just a legitimating exercise, where local knowledge becomes a driving force for social transformation and where participation can be expressed as achieving power in terms of access to, and control of resources necessary to protect livelihood. As a result our experience includes: increased awareness amongst people of their own situation and the socio-economic realities that confronts them, their real problems and where they come from and a realisation that they have a role to play in solving these. I was also amazed by the extent at which ordinary people were able to use their local knowledge in analysing our development environment, coming forward with appropriate strategies and participating in the decision making process.

Our community participation process also focussed on creating an enabling environment for poor and marginalized people to speak out, as a result these words now assisted in breaking down age-old walls that divided key stakeholders in our local community. Our 2nd generation IDP thus puts an increasing focus on local arrangements, the social engineering and empowerment that need to take place at community level.

To Mayor Chris Taute, Councillors, Municipal Manager, Johan Jacobs thank you for your capable leadership. A special word of appreciation to the municipal management team, our ward committees and advisory committees, all our civil society and community role-players, citizens and particularly our Ward Councillors and Community Development Workers (CDW's) for your input, it really made a difference!

Yours, in service of all the people of the Hessequa.

Claude V. Schroeder
Deputy Municipal Manager





SECTION A: EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY OF THE HESSEQUA INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN FOR 2007 – 2011.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION

1.1 Introduction

The IDP is the result of extensive consultation with the various role players as is demonstrated by the development priorities that each of the eight wards put forward. A situation analysis is made of where the Hessequa community is at present and where it wants to be in future. The infra-structure and services delivery, socio-economic, spatial development and economic framework are respectively outlined. The way forward is subsequently concretised firstly by a strategic long term vision and secondly, by the detail of the way in which these strategic objectives will be achieved.

The IDP is guided by the vision for Hessequa:

Hessequa's vision for 2027

A cooperative community where everyone reaps the fruit of a growing economy through sustainable development and utilization of our human potential and our natural resources

1.2 Characteristics of the Hessequa region

The Hessequa municipal jurisdiction covers the area between the Langeberg Mountains and the Southern Cape coast between the Breede and Gouritz Rivers.

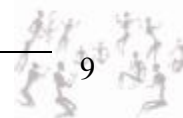
The following characteristics of the region are highlighted, in our 2nd generation IDP:

Political legacies

Policies of the past and specifically the apartheid system and restrictive legislation such as the Group Areas Act impacted on the community in several ways such as amongst others; (i) a region where the ownership of land and businesses is still almost exclusively in the hands of whites, (ii) income patterns that are highly skewed in the favour of whites, and (iii) an impoverished coloured community with limited skills needed in a modern world. One of the biggest challenges that confronts our Municipality is that of integration, social integration, political inclusion as well as socio-spatial integration. The fact that the Hessequa Municipality is made up of six, previous municipalities makes the challenge of integration even more difficult. Building the kind of social cohesion that our honourable President challenges us to do is definitely high on our agenda, but we are in many instances still confronted with resistance to change.

Demography

The total population is presently about 45 000. Hessequa's urban population is growing whilst the rural population is declining. The immigration of elderly (pre)-retired people to coastal towns and villages and younger people from the Eastern Cape add to the





population. Rural depopulation is closely linked with agricultural dynamics. Young whites and coloureds leave the municipal area to seek opportunities elsewhere.

Education

About 57% of children are in school (blacks about 49%, coloureds about 55% and whites about 65%). Very few children in Hessequa are involved in post-matric studies; young people have to leave the area if they want to obtain further training/education.

Skills Levels

Unskilled jobs dominate in Hessequa. Clerks, shop assistants and hand workers are fewer. Poor skills levels occur mainly in the black and coloured groups. Higher schooling is largely present amongst whites but is growing in the coloured group. Many elderly residents in Hessequa have degrees but most are no longer economically active.

Poverty and inequality

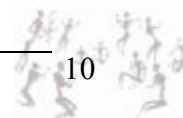
Significant portions of black (~80%) and coloured (~75%) and fewer white Hessequans (~ 29%) live below the poverty line. There are pockets of extreme poverty, for example in Kwanokuthula in Riversdale and Slangrivier. Each of the inland towns has a large group of poor people, a result of past discrimination and current unequal patterns of land and business ownership and a skills gap.

The established patterns of poverty and inequality are reinforced by economic trends that impact harshly on semi-skilled and unskilled workers. This includes a decline in the fishing industry, the vagaries of droughts and floods, and the seasonal nature of agricultural, tourism and domestic work. The decline of the inland towns and the rise of the coastal towns have resulted in hundreds of workers having long daily commutes from the inland to the coastal towns and back to work.

In the disadvantaged groups, women bear the brunt of poverty, a lack of social cohesion, high levels of violence, gender inequality and alcohol abuse.

Structure of the economy

The local economy is a typical rural economy that cannot count on the mineral resources and manufacturing sectors to drive the local economy. To a large extent the local economy is and was one where agriculture played a major role. In recent years however a change in the economy occurred. The natural beauty of the region and its accessibility attracted more holiday makers and tourists to the coast. This stimulated the development in the coastal towns and villages and the associated good infra-structure increased their attractiveness as retirement destinations. Over the past decade, Stilbaai was the fastest growing town in Hessequa. One of the impacts of the influx was the prominence of the construction sector. The rapid growth of the coastal towns and villages also raises many conservation issues regarding natural and cultural assets and





heritage which impact on its continued attractiveness as lucrative residential area.

Since economic growth and employment generation is of primary importance for the well-being of the community cognisance must be taken of the economic challenges facing the area.

These include amongst others;

- * Declining profitability of agriculture and strategies by individual farmers to protect their profitability which amongst others led to a depopulation of the rural parts of the region as people made redundant in agriculture moved (mostly) to the inland towns to seek work. This tendency must be stopped by diversifying to new (non-traditional) products and eco- and agri-tourism activities.
- * Utilize the new possibilities provided by amongst others tourism,
 - * *Development of appropriate skills that are in demand.
- * Stimulate entrepreneurial skills, explore new development initiatives such as amongst others green energy
- * Address the resistance to change. Current challenges involve the willingness and ability to adapt to new political dispensations (e.g. the new South Africa and the integration of a number of former independent municipalities into Hessequa municipality), the forces of globalization (and the need to diversify the local economy), dealing with the NIMBY (“Not In My Backyard”) phenomenon in development, and cooperation across the borders of race, geographic location and wealth.

2. THE SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT OF HESSEQUA

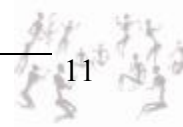
The brief overview shows that modern Hessequa is far removed from where we want to be in 20 years. In order to achieve the vision, we have to start change processes immediately. This required the development of a Mission Statement and the elucidation of our Strategic IDP Objectives.

Hessequa’s Mission

To be a co-operative and prosperous community where:

- Future generations will be able to share equally in the bounty of our region;
- It is ensured that fundamental needs are met;
- Our environmental, archaeological and cultural heritage is guarded;
- We live in harmony with nature and each other in honour of our common ancestry in the place that gave rise to our humanity.

The mission is supported by the following six strategic objectives:





Hessequa's Strategic IDP Objectives

1. Ensure good governance through institutional transformation, inter-governmental co-operation and public consultation to ensure accountability,
2. Ensure sound financial management, maximised resource mobilisation through effective and efficient utilisation of scarce resources,
3. Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special reference to the vulnerable groups,
4. Sustain the Hessequa environment through resource conservation, good land-use practices and people-centred planning,
5. Strategic investment in high-quality basic services and efficient 'connectivity infrastructure',
6. Create an enabling social environment that ensures safe, healthy and vibrant communities.

The above strategic objectives are pursued by identified strategic interventions as presented on pages 166 to 203 of the IDP. In this section the detail of the individual projects and plans as well as the funds allocated from the budget for its implementation are tabulated.

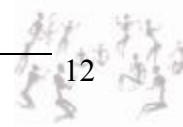
The underlying rationale that led to these projects and plans are discussed below as the five elements that constitute the sustainable development process of Hessequa. These five elements are economic development, social development, sustainable environmental utilisation, infrastructure and service delivery and lastly good governance.

2.1. Economic development

- Hessequa is a rural region in which agriculture has been the economic mainstay for a very long time. The future of Hessequa's agriculture is of special importance to the economic future of the region. The opportunities provided by new activities such as tourism and induced growth projects. Hessequa's economy must grow in order to achieve the goal of a community where everyone reaps economic benefits. There is a need to satisfy demand from local suppliers. Too much money flows out of the local economy to other regions.
- Too little value is added locally to primary (mostly agricultural) products.

2.2. Social development

- Poverty is widespread in Hessequa and needs to be addressed. The municipality will have to play a leading role through its activities regarding housing, spatial planning, education and health services.
- Income disparities have to be redressed without endangering the economic future of the region.
- A lack of skills and training limits Hessequa's economic future and requires the establishment of competitive low-technology enterprises.





2.3. Sustainable environmental utilisation

- The mountains, hills, shores, soils, fauna and flora of Hessequa have secured countless generations of humans. This must be continued as we seek sustainability
- Hessequa has many under-utilized natural resources; these will be developed in ecologically sustainable ways.
- Spatial development must support sustainable settlement patterns

2.4. Infrastructure and service provision

- Without a good infrastructure and services, our economic, social and environmental goals will not be achievable.

2.5. Good Governance

- A prosperous Hessequa requires effective and transparent governance that is accountable to the community

2.6 Integrated Development Strategy

The inter-relatedness of the five sustainable development themes is demonstrated in the figure below and forms the basis of Hessequa's integrated development strategy.

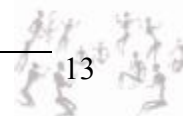
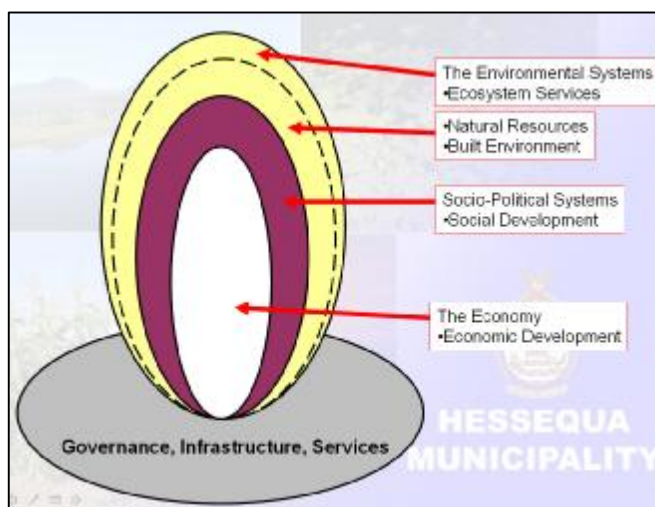
Sustainable development can only occur if economic development, social development and the ecological carrying capacity are in balance. Economic development has therefore to take place within the context of community needs and ecological carrying capacity. Governance and the magnitude and quality of available infrastructure and municipal services supply the substratum in which development takes place.

3. HOW WILL HESSEQUA DELIVER ON SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

The way in which five sustainable development themes are pursued is briefly outlined below.

3.1 Economic development

The structure of the local economy is described in paragraph 1.2 above. In order to move the economy and the associated institutions in the identified direction the following strategies have been identified.





3.1.1 Strategic economic initiatives

- Grow / stabilize specific economic sectors:
 - Agriculture because of:
 - its enduring importance to the local economy,
 - challenge to meet land ownership target, and
 - it's BBEE challenge.
 - Tourism because of:
 - its growing economic importance,
 - its expansion potential, and,
 - its BBEE potential
 - Construction because of:
 - growth over the past decade,
 - low-skilled job opportunities,
 - its BBEE potential
 - Retirement industry because of:
 - the need for more investment to drive the construction industry,
 - pensions increase expendable money in the community, and
 - the increase in demand for domestic workers.

- Identification and implementation of keystone projects,
- Development of human resources,
- Provision of a system of business support,
- Development of poverty eradication strategies,
- Improvement of the regulatory environment and service delivery,
- Investigation of the potential of green and sustainable technologies, e.g. wind power, and use of partnerships to overcome limitations of being a small rural local authority.

In order to drive these strategies a number of projects/plans have been identified.

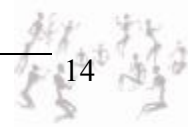
3.1.2 Keystone projects

The establishment of a 'Special Purpose Vehicle' to drive economic and social development in Hessequa is of paramount importance to Hessequa.

The lack of skills as well as the experiences of other local authorities led to the conclusion that a development agency (the "special purpose vehicle" or SPV) has to be created in order to initiate and drive economic, social and environmental development in Hessequa. The mission of the SPV will be to ensure that economic and social development takes full account of the current and future needs of all the local communities and the unique environment in which they live.

The SPV will:

- act as a conduit for funding,





- act as an implementation agent,
- be a builder of capacity to understand, advocate and integrate all developmental activities based on sustainability principles,

The SPV is a mechanism established to create capacity to plan, initiate, manage and monitor development projects.

It addresses a very important gap at the local level namely a lack of capacity to manage developmental initiatives. In many respects this capacity deficit is also prevalent in the more traditional functions of the municipality. It is a very difficult issue to overcome in the short run and it may be necessary to augment capacity by getting outside consultants.

This approach does have its limitations because it is not a sustainable strategy in that it does not cultivate internal capacity.

Whether the SPV can play a role to assist in managing the capacity creating strategies that will be necessary to execute the proposed plans/projects of the IDP must be investigated.

In addition, the development of an Archaeological Interpretation Centre in Riversdale and Coastal Megapark are seen as additional keystone activities.

The 2007/2008 budget allocated R650 000 to the establishment of the SPV, and R200 000 for the next planning phase of the Archaeological Interpretation Centre, and R100 000 for the Coastal Megapark.

3.1.3 Focus on agriculture

A number of initiatives to support and extend the agricultural/rural sector have been identified. In the Programme of strategic interventions the following initiatives have been listed and budgeted for. These include: Reinstitution of an Agricultural Advisory Council, strategic plans for land ownership, development, a BBBEE charter for land ownership and a rural development initiative

A total of R425 000 is provided for this initiative in the budget.

3.1.4 Focus on tourism

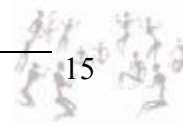
Tourism in Hessequa has grown organically in a haphazard way. Nevertheless tourism is a major factor in the rapid growth of all of the coastal towns. The building of holiday and retirement homes in the coastal towns has been a major stimulant to the construction industry.

Projects provided for include SMME and PDI development, reorganisation of tourism information and offices, branding of Hessequa tourism and special tourism projects.

As an indication of the importance of this initiative a total of R1 518 000 is provided in the budget for developing this sector.

3.1.5 Focus on the construction and retirement industries

The coastal towns are growing rapidly and provide the major stimulus for the construction industry. The construction industry is the recipient of the major





development investments in Hessequa. This industry must be protected and grown to ensure that the relatively low-skilled people in Hessequa have livelihoods and fulfilling lives. Most of the increase in permanent residents of the coastal towns was linked to retirement, as elderly people settle in these towns.

The link between the tourist industry, the retirement industry and construction is obvious. These industries are taking up the slack created by the pressures on agriculture.

Projects budgeted for include the development of strategic plans for each town and village in the region as well as strategic plans for the construction and retirement sectors and gender and skills development amongst others. An amount of R220 000 is budgeted for these initiatives

3.1.6 Special projects

It has become clear that leadership and entrepreneurship need to be strengthened at many levels in Hessequa. To reach our goal of living in harmony with the environment, it is necessary to investigate its economic and other potentials. Due to the low general skills levels in Hessequa, it is also necessary to improve our capacity to develop sustainable low-technology businesses. For these reasons some special projects are needed:

- Leadership development
- Entrepreneurship development and business training
- Value addition through low-tech business development
- Investigation of the potential of green technologies.

A total amount of R700 000 is provided in the budget for these initiatives.

3.2 Social development

For the implementation of the Hessequa social development Programme the IDP sets the stage to:

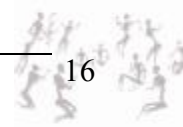
- create opportunities to ensure that the youth of Hessequa realises their full potential
- ensure that quality service is provided to the poor, vulnerable people affected, amongst others by HIV & AIDS and TB
- create an effective developmental partnership between government and civil society to limit and reverse the spread of HIV&AIDS and TB

3.2.1 Focus on the youth

Projects that targets the youth include: life skills projects, a Hessequa youth council, awareness campaigns, education and training Programmes, bursaries and other youth developmental projects.

A total of R112 000 is budgeted for this initiative but other sources of funds must also be developed.

3.2.2 Focus HIV&AIDS containment





Programmes to educate and sensitise people regarding the epidemic - and training people to provide home based volunteer Programmes have been identified.

A total of R30 000 is budgeted for but additional funding will have to be found elsewhere.

3.2.3 Vulnerable groups

A number of projects have been identified such as:

Hessequa ABET project
Home based care
Soeterus Old Age Home

A total of R350 000 is provided for these projects in the budget

3.3 Sustainable environmental utilisation

The sustainable use of the environment is divided up in two components namely:

- Spatial development as manifested in settlement patterns of the region's inhabitants
- Sustainable use of the natural environment

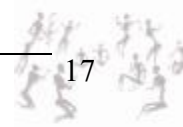
3.3.1 Spatial development

- The towns and villages in Hessequa are characterised by development that is spatially fragmented mostly associated with previous apartheid policies.
- Rapid and unmanaged urbanisation. Over the last number of years rapid growth in the lower socio-economic settlements occurred within built-up areas and on the fringes of settlements such as; Kwanokathula, Bitouville, Theronville, Melkhoutfontein and Joe Slovo Park.
- Low density settlements and urban sprawl. The low density patterns of lower socio-economic settlements result in high cost of service provision
- Unco-ordinated spatial development. Decisions on spatial developments are often taken by a range of different authorities and full cognisance of its combined effect gives rise to unfavourable environmental and serviceability impacts.
- Depletion of valuable natural resources and agricultural land. The consequence of abovementioned spatial development has an impact on the sustainable use of the natural environment

Strategies

In order to address these challenges the IDP identified five spatial developmental strategies. They are:

- Consolidate and integrate spatial development by developing land in proximity of public transport facilities and existing services.
- Support the land reform and settlement Programme by identifying zones of opportunity according to land needs





- Pro-actively manage land use and set appropriate levels of service to achieve sustainability in urban, peri-urban and rural areas.
- Implement the principles of Intergrated Environmental Management
- Identify resources and manage land use in valuable resource areas.

Projects/plans

These strategies are supported by specific projects such as:

- Vacant land audit
- Densification study
- Mixed land use study
- Development of economical erven for GAP housing
- Develoment of industrial erven
- Various aesthetic projects such as the revitalisation of the Riverdale CBD

The budget provides for an amount of R980 000 towards the funding of these projects

3.3.2 Sustainable natural environmental development

The natural beauty of the region is one of its major attractions for tourism and also for new inhabitants. As such it is a major source of development. As such it is also a fragile resource that must be optimally utilized to protect its sustainable use. The relation between protection of the environment and the development and growth of the region implies a delicate balance.

The region contains unique fynbos vegetation .These fynbos species are threatened by urban and agricultural expansion. The protection of the Renosterveld and the various fynbos vegetation types are essential.

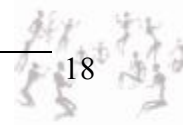
The protection of the aquatic resources is also necessary. The sustainable utilisation of the Duiwenhoks,Goukou,Gourits Rivers should be receive attention

Strategies

Strategies to achieve sustainable natural resource utilisation:

- Identify and empower individuals and institutions by finding and developing ways to engage stakeholders in conservation planning initiatives
- Define the planning region. In order to undertake conservation it is fundamental to define the region to which it entails.
- Identify and assess the gap in knowledge pertaining to nature conservation and identify research gaps
- Identify and assess land use. Many activities that degrade and destroy the environment must be identified in order to enhance the sustainable use of the resources
- Promote sustainable use by nature based tourism
- Develop a model for land management that conserves the environment and is acceptable to all stakeholders

Develop an implementation strategy embedded with a monitoring and evaluation component to ensure the effectiveness of conservation initiatives-





Information gathering and research must have an overarching purpose namely to quantify the capacity of the environment in terms of further development .

Clear guidelines must be established for the respective biomes that must be protected at all cost. Guidelines must also be established and quantified to specify how the use of other natural resources must be pro-actively managed in order to maintain a balance between development and conservation.

Projects/plans

Projects identified to support the strategic objectives are:

- Maintaining municipal nature reserves
- Eco-schools / globe / world congress initiatives
- Managing the rivers
- Promote animal protection societies
- Environmental capacity building and employment creation projects
- General projects such as Slangrivier Greening project, waste recycling project (phase 1), brak natuurtuin etc.

A total of R1040 00 is budgeted for these environmental initiatives.

3.4 Infrastructure and service delivery

Local governments confronted with the challenge to provide basic services to its communities despite limited funding sources, skills and infrastructure.

To ensure that Hessequa can cope with its future demand for infrastructure and service provision an integrated infrastructure development plan is needed. The IDP contains the detail on pp74 to 94 of such a plan to provide water, sanitation, transport, storm water, electricity, environmental management, waste management and disaster management amongst others.

3.4.1 Strategic focus

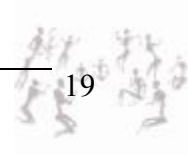
In order to ensure that infrastructure plans are not wish lists, public meetings were arranged in Hessequa in order to agree on attainable objectives.

The infrastructure planning was guided by three principles namely to;

- eliminate the backlogs of the past
- Maintaining existing infrastructure
- Plan and design new infrastructure timeously in order to satisfy future demand in a cost effective way

The strategic focus entailed amongst others the following services:

Water
Sewerage
Roads and transport
Storm water
Electricity
Solid waste
Housing





Housing as one of the the areas of service provision that needs special attention because of the urgent need. The strategies need to be aligned with national and provincial policy documents. Housing plans will be reflected in the spatial development framework for Hessequa which supports the the integrated development of previously disadvantaged communities. This framework is alligned with the Hessequa local economic development plan.

The strategies for housing projects of the municipality focus on the destitute and the homeless residents. Alternative housing types for all groups also receive attention. The GAP housing market that caters for the middle income groups are explored. Mixed housing and land use patterns in order to facilitate integration in line with the Spatial Development framework and national and provincial policies are also explored.

Housing (sustainable human settlements) is awarded a provincial allocation of R7 101 000 in 2007/2008b for the provision of 420 and 60 settlements for Albertinia and Gouritsmond respectively. Plans for 2008/2009 and further are in the pipeline.

The provision of energy to local government users is a very important service where local authorities mainly act as a conduit for the national provider. It is one of the long term objectives of Hessequa to become less dependent on external sources of energy.

Alternative sustainable renewable energy sources are investigated as a way to decrease this dependence and also at the same time create employment opportunities that can result from renewable energy projects. As part of the economic development plans, outlined above, the viability of solar, wind and solid waste energy plants are assessed.

Projects/plans

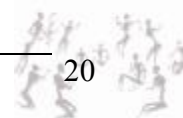
Infrastructure and service provision from the bulk of the activities of the Hessequa municipality and the operational plan is encompassed in the annual budget. Where the strategic focus as outlined above are prioritised and funded.

As such the provision of infrastructure and services are also outlined in detail in the IDP where the various focus areas are outlined in detail in the description of the plans to achieve strategic objective number 5, namely strategic investment in quality basic services and efficient connectivity infrastructure.

3.5 Good governance

Good governance is the cornerstone of the wellbeing of the community. Representatives are elected by the community and must adhere, amongst others, to the following principles:

- Be accountable to their constituencies
- Ensure that the wishes of the community are communicated
- Ensure that the agreed upon priorities are executed
- Must communicate with the constituencies
- Create the channels of communication
- As governing body the Council must oversee that services are provided in a cost effective way by insisting on an appropriate performance evaluation system





- Monitor the execution of operational and capital plans
- Monitor capacity to execute projects and insist on a capacity building strategy
- Ensure that policies are in place to ensure ethical behaviour of municipal officials and councillors
- Ensure policies to prevent corruption

The IDP cannot contain all the measures to ensure good governance. It is however prudent to indicate that the IDP documents in detail the consultation processes followed in the different wards to obtain their priorities in terms of development projects as well as required infrastructure.

The ward committee system is fully operational as a link between the Council and its constituents

The elements to monitor good governance are in place and a willingness to go beyond the statutory requirements are demonstrated by the recent adoption of an anti-corruption strategy for Hessequa. This is the first of such nationally supported strategies to be implemented in South Africa

In the IDP specific projects to address good governance are listed and funded. Projects to provide access to PC's, train and empower staff, ensure a stable network, projects to ensure efficient communication, support services and capacity building and training are among those indicated.

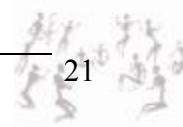
These projects form part of the operational and capital budgets.

Conclusion

The IDP is the culmination of a number of initiatives to support the movement towards the achievement of the vision for Hessequa. With the aid of a consultative process in the eight wards of the municipality the need for infrastructures and services were determined.

Although infrastructure and services forms the bulk of municipal expenditure the broader responsibility of Hessequa must also be recognised. As such measures must be put in place to develop the local economy, provide for social development, and ensure the sound utilisation of the environment

The IDP indicated how the various policy objectives will be pursued. It does not however contain the detail of the implementation plans and how its execution will be monitored. Implementation (execution) and monitoring are therefore needed to meet the IDP objectives.





SECTION B: SECOND GENERATION IDP

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

1. INTRODUCTION

The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000, Chapter 05 Section 24, states that all Municipalities must comply with the following key planning imperatives at all times:

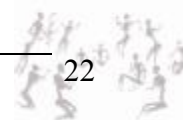
- “(1) The planning undertaken by a municipality must be aligned with, and complement, the development plans and strategies of other affected municipalities and other organs of state so as to give effect to the principles of co-operative government contained in section 41 of the Constitution.
- (2) Municipalities must participate in national and provincial development Programmes as required in section 153(b) of the Constitution”.

Furthermore in the Local Government: Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations of 2001, Chapter 02 states that the Municipality must identify “all known projects, plans and Programmes to be implemented within the municipality by any organ of state”.

It is within this legislative context that the Hessequa Municipality embarked on its 2nd generation Integrated Development Plan (IDP) process. Our process has been based on this progressive planning rationale and it has been locked on a simple legislative framework to ensure consistence and an enhanced quality of the IDP. The principle of co-operative governance underpins this development planning rationale. Co-operative governance is enshrined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa as a practice for maximum benefit

In the 1st generation Hessequa IDP, the municipality made a submission on the core development priorities in the IDP, existing and future capital projects directly dependent on provincial funding, funding problems with additional functions being transferred to municipality and implementation hindrances between province and municipality. Some of the key challenges contained in the Hessequa First generation IDP include:

- Lack of a long term development vision;
- No clear strategies for human capital development, skills development and dealing with HIV \ AIDS;
- Lack of link between integrated human settlements and spatial development framework;
- Need for sectoral plans that are linked to local economic development and poverty eradication;
- No indication of how service delivery backlogs will be dealt with;
- No indication of medium to long term infrastructure projects linked to job creation and poverty eradication;
- Need for clear LED targets and deliverables, including BBEE, entrepreneurship development, etc.
- Need for ward based planning, budgeting and delivery.



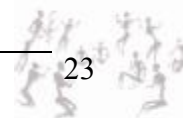


Some of the concerns stemming from the First Generation Hessequa IDP, include:

- Limited **socio-economic analysis** of space economy: drivers of development / underdevelopment
- Limited **sustainable development argument** with long term strategy
- **Weak spatial planning** for geographic investment targeting
- Inability to make trade-off decisions, and identify **critical investment** to sustain development / growth
- No **long-term infrastructure investment** strategy to support growth
- Limited success in **inter-governmental planning and budgeting**
- **Projects / Interventions not well-resourced** (wish-lists)
- **Weak IDP-budget link**
- **Inability to integrate development action** across sectors, government departments and the social partners (business, labour, civil society)

Over the last few months the Hessequa Municipality held hands with its communities and social partners and went through a robust process to put a credible, 2nd generation IDP in place. Some of the characteristics of the Hessequa 2nd generation IDP include:

- This 2nd generation Hessequa IDP is the result of a robust public- and stakeholder participation process and is truly people-driven. It has been marked by proven citizen responsiveness and reaction, constant feed back, evaluation by stakeholders through a participative process in wards as well as sector engagements. By taking a developmental approach the 2nd generation Hessequa IDP process has been marked by strong leadership, both from the Mayor and Councillors, the Municipal Management team as well as the community development workers (CDW's).
- With the assistance of the EDEN District Municipality, through their district-wide socio-economic survey done in 2006, this 2nd generation Hessequa IDP includes a credible **socio-economic analysis** of our reality, with a particular focus on our eight wards. In our analysis we were able to touch on demography, access to services, poverty, labour market, economic activity, grant dependency, etc.
- The 2nd generation Hessequa IDP is deliberately set within the context of the fundamentals of sustainable development and contains a clear **long term strategy** based on rigorous socio-economic analysis, linking it to strategy and Programmes / projects.
- Through robust engagements between Council, management and ward committees, culminating in a March 2007 Witsand Bosberaad, the 2nd generation Hessequa IDP contains a **well-resourced plan**.
- Throughout the 2nd generation IDP process a high premium has been put on **alignment** with national and provincial policies and planning. Whilst some Departments have provided hands on support, others did not respond to our requests for input into the process. The Hessequa Municipality's IDP must ensure that cognizance is given to the relevant organs of state and their respective plans. The IDP should be based on and aligned with all plans in place by the different government departments with resource allocations at their respective levels. The powers and functions of the different spheres of government are key tools to avert duplication of initiatives and the funding related to those initiatives.





CHAPTER 2: KEY ELEMENTS OF A CREDIBLE IDP

- ♦ Service Delivery:
(Sanitation, Water, Electricity, Refuse Removal, Municipal Roads, Infrastructure plans, EPWP, Sector plans, (Health, Education, Transport))
- ♦ Economic Development **(Alignment (NSDP; PGDS, DM / LM interface, Special groups, 1st and 2nd Economies))**
- ♦ Spatial Development Framework (Integrated Human Settlement, NSDP, PGDS, **Profiling: Economic, Geographic, Demographic**)
- ♦ Institutional Arrangements *(sustainable)*
(Project Consolidate, Project Consolidate interventions, Human Resource Strategy, Skills Development Plan, Performance Management System, Operations and Maintenance)
- ♦ Financial Management and Corporate Governance **(Compliance with MFMA and MSA: Financial Statements, Audits, Financial Plan, Budget, SDBIP, Revenue, Anti-corruption)**
- ♦ Governance **(participation, councillor conduct, ward committees, communication *(connectivity with community)*)**
- ♦ IGR **(co-operative governance, IGR Forums, sectoral involvement)**

CHAPTER 3: INTER-GOVERNMENTAL PLANNING CONTEXT

3.1. Key Planning Instruments for Consideration

Honourable President Thabo Mbeki's state of the nation address of February 2007 has set the tone for the Hessequa second generation IDP. A Summary of the key focuses of the state of the nation address is attached as Annexure A.

The other major policy statement that directly imparts on the Hessequa IDP is the state of the province address delivered by Premier Ibrahim Rasool, February 2007, attached as Annexure B.

Hessequa recognizes the following plans and Programmes as important for consideration:

i. National Level

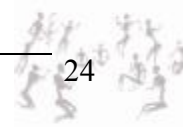
- Accelerated and shared growth initiative of Southern Africa
- Millennium Development Goals

ii. Provincial Level

- Ikapa Elihlumayo
- Western Cape Spatial Development Framework

iii. District Level

- Eden District Municipality IDP





iv. Municipal Level

- Hessequa 2027 Vision

3.2. The Instruments in Perspective and Their Convergence

As reflected earlier, this section must push out the relationship between the Hessequa Integrated Development Plan and the other key planning instruments from the National, Provincial and the District Government levels.

The instruments aligned to the IDP are those perceived to be key, which have a cross cutting effect at the other levels of government. They currently occupy the centre stage at their respective spheres of government and they seem to have an overarching (over-reaching or umbrella) role. Since the IDP is an evolutionary document, these plans and Programmes will be reviewed accordingly as time progresses. Furthermore, alignment between the Hessequa IDP and these plans would be clearly illustrated.

3.2.1. Hessequa IDP and Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (“ASGISA”)

Through ASGISA, the South African government seeks to halve poverty and unemployment by 2014. To realise such fundamental objectives, the growth of our economy is important. Whether these objectives are realistic or not, may best be illustrated by the growth trends of the South African economy since 1994. Before 1994, the South African economy averaged less than 01%. During the period from 1994 to 2004, the GDP averaged 03%. After 1994, the economy averaged 04% and during the year 2005, it has been able to reach the 2005 level. During the second quarter of the current year (2006), GDP hit the 4,6% growth mark.

This performance could be attributed mainly to huge capital inflows, which were registered at R80bn from the period 2003 to 2005. This foreign investment has been paralleled by huge volumes of foreign direct investments. Up to 2005, 540 000 jobs were created in South Africa.

These are the economic realities against which ASGISA seeks to realize its objective of halving poverty and unemployment by 2014. For this to be realized, the economic argument suggests that a specific growth level of 06% must parallel these targets. ASGISA intends to realize this on a phased approach with 4,5% growth between 2005 and 2009 and 06% between 2009 and 2014.

The volatility of the Rand, skills scarcity, a costly and ineffective logistics frame, the organizational capacity of the state and its organs, barriers to entry in some sectors of the economy, legislative burden and access to capital by SMME's, are some of the obstacles in reaching the target and thus realising the ASGISA.

ASGISA proactively proposes responses to these problems, which include infrastructure development, sector strategies, skills development, macro economic issues, public administration issues and second economy issues. It is within this context that Hessequa IDP must seek alignment with ASGISA. The Programme matic-areas for ASGISA flows from this thinking and HESSEQUA IDP as a local planning instrument must determine the extent to which it has a direct/indirect relationship with ASGISA.

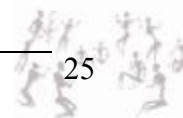




Illustration of Points of Convergence between Hessequa IDP and ASGISA

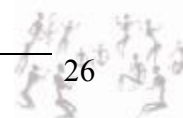
ASGISA OBJECTIVE AREA	ASGISA STRATEGY	HESSEQUA IDP OBJECTIVE	IDP POSSIBLE STRATEGIES AND PROJECTS
Costs and efficiency of the logistics system	Infrastructure Investment through the Municipal Infrastructure Grant	5. Strategic Investment in quality basic services and efficient 'connectivity infrastructure'	Water Infrastructure Roll out
	Eskom Capitalisation Programme		Paving Programme
	Provincial Infrastructure Grant		Bulk electricity Infrastructure
	South African Broadband network		Hessequa Wireless Network
Volatile Currency, SMME Growth and Barriers to entry in certain economic sectors	Address second economy issues	3. Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special focus on the vulnerable groups.	Community based planning Programme with a specific focus on historically disadvantaged communities
	Sector Strategies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Business ○ Procession Output ○ Tourism ○ Agro Processing ○ Bio fuel ○ Wood, Pulp and Paper 		Improved small farmers support Programme
			Developmental Tourism Projects
			Current investigation into the viability of a call centre in Hessequa

Clearly from the above graphical illustration of possible points of convergence, the Infrastructure provision, which has high priority in terms of Hessequa’s development intentions, finds expression on the ASGISA. Also, another key objective for developmental local government, i.e. promotion of LED, is coming out strongly on the ASGISA.

3.2.2. Hessequa IDP and the Millennium Development Goals

The Hessequa Municipal area wrestles with the challenge of promoting development that ensures benefits for all, whilst preserving biodiversity and environmentally sensitive issues. The balance between these two variables is extremely complex. In the 2nd generation Hessequa IDP process the need to review the Hessequa SDF in the context of the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) and the Provincial Spatial Development Perspective (PSDF) has been identified as a critical priority, please see SDF input in this document. The review of the Hessequa Spatial Framework will assist the Municipality to make correct and well thought out spatial choices, as opposed to being more regulatory. The Millennium Development Goals seek to ensure environmental sustainability in South Africa and the world.

In September 2000, 189 countries, including the Republic of South Africa, committed to the Millennium Declaration. This declaration sets out clear targets, which are intended to

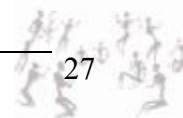




be met by the year 2015. From the above, it is clear that there must be a consistency in planning between ASGISA and MDG. ASGISA would like to halve poverty and unemployment by 2014, and that is one of the eight MDGs. The timeframes of ASGISA are clearly responsive to those of the MDG and Hessequa Municipal IDP must follow the trend.

Millennium Development Goals: Goals, Targets, and Indicators – Relationship with Municipal IDP Objectives, Strategies and Objectives

MDG 01	Eradicate extreme poverty and hunger	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	3. Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special focus on the vulnerable groups
MDG 02	Achieve universal primary education	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	3. Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special focus on the vulnerable groups
MDG 03	Promote gender equality and empower women	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	3. Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special focus on the vulnerable groups
MDG 04	Reduce child mortality	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	3. Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special focus on the vulnerable groups
MDG 05	Improve maternal health	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	3. Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special focus on the vulnerable groups
MDG 06	Combat HIV/AIDS, malaria and other diseases	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	6. Create an enabling social environment that ensures safe, healthy and vibrant communities.
MDG 07	Ensure environmental sustainability	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	4. Sustain Hessequa environment through resource conservation, good land-use practices and people-centered planning





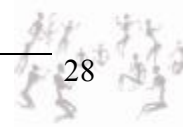
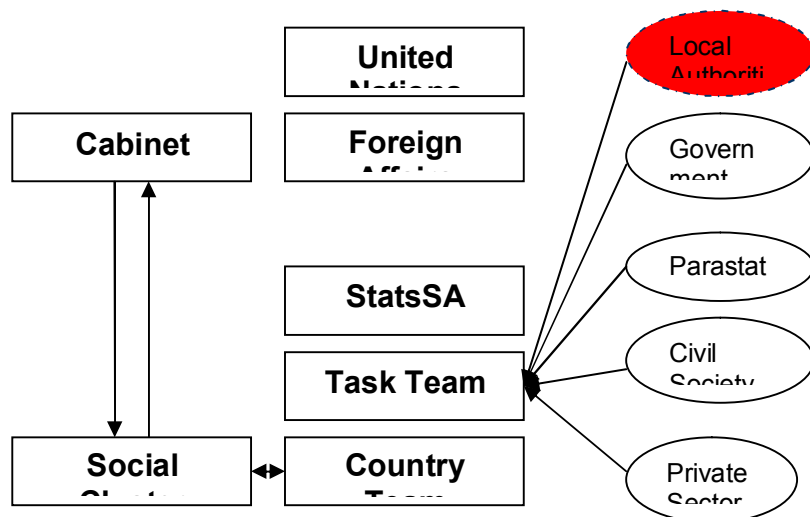
MDG 08	Develop a global partnership for development	Hessequa Municipal IDP Objective	1. Ensure Good Governance through institutional transformation, inter-governmental co-operation and public consultation to ensure accountability.
--------	----------------------------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Where there is convergence between the Millennium Development Goals and the Hessequa Municipal IDP, the indicators that are flowing from the MDG must be utilized.

The Millennium Development has got 18 indicators that, as part of ensuring the IDP is responsive to other overarching plans, would be utilized for those specific IDP Objectives to which they relate.

In trying to ensure that the MDG is filtered down to the community level and it is localized, the above relationship would have to be cascaded to the level of those indicators. The localization will help accelerate South Africa's capacity to deliver on those goals. Another significant benefit of the localization process is that it would minimize resistance to the implementation of the Millennium Development Goals and further ensure that the ownership thereof is by the communities at large, irrespective of where they are.

The Millennium Development Goals – A guide for South African civil society undertaken by the Environmental Monitoring Group in 2005 provides a schematic illustration of how the MDG process works in South Africa and it gives pointers to the specific area of Local Authorities.





Source: The Millennium Development Goals – A guide for South African civil society – Environmental Monitoring Group (2005).

Particular attention is given to the recognition that is afforded to the Local Authorities on the realization of the Millennium Development Goals. The Hessequa Municipality Integrated Development Plan is the key instrument for ensuring that Hessequa Municipality's thinking is in line with those of the MDG and therefore reinforces the effort of the MDG.

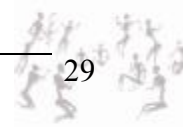
The Republic of South Africa is required to provide a report on the implementation of the Millennium Development Goals. The extent to which the planning instruments of the different spheres of government in South Africa attempts to relate to the Millennium Development Goals will have a critical impetus on its realization by South Africa. The Economies of Scales that would be realized as a result of the alignment would be the key-driving factor for this and it would thus help encourage maximum utilization of limited resources. The Millennium Development Goals are the leading measure of progressiveness by the governments of the world and what makes it more significant is the fact that the world is intent at tracking the performances of the world against it.

From Hessequa Municipality's point of view, its commitment to spend or at least plan in accordance with such progressive world instruments position the Municipality extremely well, both in terms of significantly addressing the plight of poor people, by ensuring that its thinking is aligned and thus could be funded anywhere within the Republic of South Africa.

3.2.3. Hessequa IDP and IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO

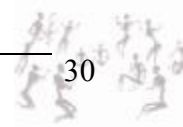
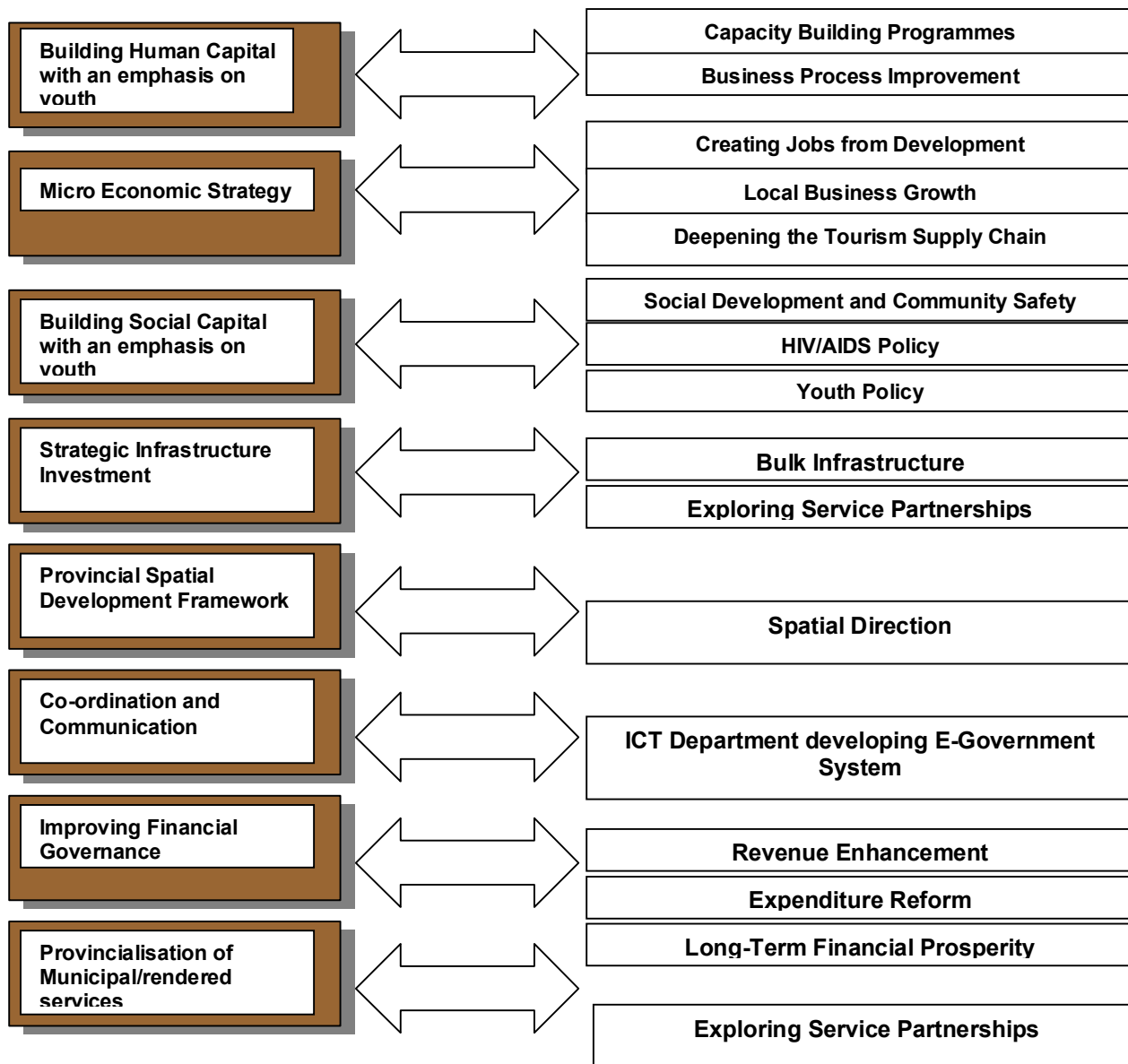
IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO is the principal guide for the development trajectory of the Province of the Western Cape. This plan recognizes the need for a holistic and comprehensive approach with regard to the development of the Western Cape. The issues flowing from ASGISA, particularly regarding shared growth and the need to bridge the gap between the rich and the poor, are embraced in the IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO.

This plan particularly pushes out strongly the vision of dignity, prosperity and equity, which invariable forced the radical change in the spending priorities of the Provincial Government. This has been done in line with the Socio Economic conditions and the National Policy priorities of the Republic of South Africa.





In pursuit of the above noble intentions, the following eight objectives would be the key drivers of the IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO Programme and, as the IDP document depicts, it would be done in comparison with IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO and Hessequa IDP:





3.2.4. Western Cape Spatial Development Framework and Hessequa IDP

The Western Cape Spatial Development Framework flows directly from IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO, which is the Western Cape Provincial Growth and Development Plan (“WCSDP”). At the heart of the WCSDP is a recognition of the need to redress the apartheid past in settlement patterns. Through this framework, the Provincial Government hopes to strike a sound balance between progressive community growth and the environmental preservation of the communities.

The WCSDP seeks to be a spatial expression of the Provincial Growth and Development Plan. Equally, the Hessequa Spatial Development Framework, which is an overarching document in the Hessequa IDP, must be a mirrored expression of the development intentions of Hessequa Municipality as expressed in the IDP. The Western Cape Spatial Development Framework must serve as a guide to the Hessequa IDP and equally the Hessequa SDF must be aligned with the WCSDP. The Province and the Hessequa Municipality needs the SDF particularly for purposes of ensuring sustainable environment for enhanced absorptive capacity of future human development needs, strategic response to topographical issues and historic issues, accompanying socio economic manifestations and determination of spatial and not so spatial issues.

This definitely reaffirms a relationship between the Western Cape Spatial Development Framework and the Hessequa Municipality Spatial Development Framework. Whilst the Western Cape Spatial Development Framework is a Provincial Wide Strategy, the Hessequa Municipal SDF is a Municipal Wide response to spatial development issues.

In pursuit of its strategic intentions the Western Cape Spatial Development Framework has got the following strategic objectives, which could find a direct expression on the proposed, reviewed Hessequa Spatial Development Framework and 2nd generation Hessequa IDP.

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 01

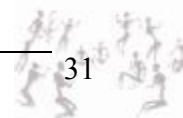
Align the future settlement patterns of the province with economic potential and the location of environmental resources

In line with this strategic objective, the Hessequa Spatial Development Framework recognizes a need for the undertaking of a study that will deal with Integrated Human Settlement. It is within the context of such a study that tangible projects geared at addressing strategic settlement would be addressed.

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 02

Deliver Human Development and Basic Needs Programmes wherever they may be required

Both the Hessequa Integrated Development Plan and the Hessequa Spatial Development Framework have targeted the development of deprived communities amongst key areas of intervention. These interventions will find expression in the proposed Hessequa Community Based planning process.





STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 03

Strategically Invest Scarce Public Sector Resources where they will generate the highest socio economic returns

Hessequa IDP recognizes the challenge of leveraging its own resources to encourage partnerships with the private sector to boost employment and to foster SMMEs. A key intervention contained in this 2nd generation Hessequa IDP, relates around putting a special purpose vehicle in place to coordinate and drive local development implementation. A critical aspect relating to this is the need to put institutionalized and structured social dialogue mechanisms and institutions in place. It's about finding creative and appropriate ways to stimulate real local economic development and to broaden the economic base of Hessequa.

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 04

Support Land Reform

In line with this Strategic Objective, the Hessequa 2nd generation Integrated Development Plan must address the challenge of lack of or no access to land for development. The aim is to develop a Hessequa Rural Development Programme, driven by a soon to be appointed Rural Development Officer. Our efforts for prioritized interventions on land reform and rural development, will be done in the context of our strategic objective to "Sustain Hessequa environment through resource conservation, good land-use practices and people-centered planning"

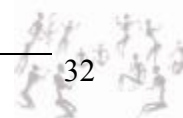
STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 05

Conserve and Strengthen the sense of place of important natural, cultural and productive landscapes, artefacts and buildings

The Hessequa 2nd generation IDP put a high premium on increasing the Municipality's efforts to conserve the sensitive eco-systems on which Hessequa relies. Through a robust, participatory process, the Hessequa municipality is working with public and private property owners, NGO's and environmental specialists, to engage in sustainable development in the context of Local Agenda 21. A particular focus of our 2nd generation relates to building a Hessequa identity and establishing a unique Hessequa brand based on our 2027 vision.

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 06

End Apartheid Structure of Urban Settlement





STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 07

The Hessequa IDP states that, through the SDF, it seeks to facilitate appropriate development which is responsive to the local economic development framework of the Municipality. The proposed reviewed Hessequa SDF will put a special focus on breaking new ground that will include improved land use and realization of integrated human settlement that redresses the historic settlement patterns.

Conveniently locate urban activities and promote public and non-motorized transport

The Eden District Municipality, funded by the Provincial Administration of the Western Cape (PAWC), compiled the *Current Public Transport Records (CPTR)*, an *Operating License Strategy (OLS)*, a *Public Transport Plan (PTP)*, the second generation Hessequa IDP informed by an *Integrated Transport Plan (ITP)* for the entire Eden municipal area.

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 08

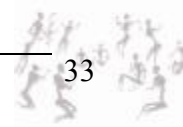
Protect Biodiversity and Agricultural Resources

The Hessequa 2nd generation IDP, contains a framework that attempts to clearly articulate a conceptual basis for the discipline of regional conservation planning. This framework will be exposed to a robust public participation and alignment process. It will greatly enhance the likelihood of successfully implementing effective conservation action. It promotes stakeholder access to the conceptual and operational aspects of proposed courses of action.

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE NO. 09

Minimise the consumption of scarce environmental resources, particularly water, fuel, building materials, mineral resources, electricity and land

The Hessequa Environmental Management and Sustainable Development Framework, talks about the importance of creating of a healthy balance between development and conservation through realistic and expert environmental management and resource conservation and utilisation.





3.2.5. Hessequa IDP and Eden DM IDP

EDEN District Municipality

Governance and Institutional Development Finance and Resource Mobilisation

HESSEQUA IDP

A new rates policy based on equity and affordability will be introduced in tandem with a new General Valuation Roll. Financial reform will continue to seek to address affordability and sustainability. The principles of Masakhane will be applied and Council will provide support to indigent households where appropriate.

Capital expenditure will be targeted at bulk infrastructure, the poor and deprived areas. Value for money will become a guiding principle in all expenditure decisions undertaken by Council. Greater exclusivity in the expenditure process will be targeted by the Council's BEE and Procurement Policies.

A proper mix of own revenue, together with grant and borrowed monies, will be maintained to ensure the town does not fall into financial crisis. Long-term expenditure will only be undertaken if the financial implications are known, affordable and achievable. The Deputy Municipal Manager and CFO have been tasked with mobilizing public and other resources for improved delivery and impact.

Hessequa Municipality will strive to be a responsive Municipality. People must be able to raise issues, complaints and suggestions, and get a swift response. At a session with staff, held on the 14th of February 2007, the Batho Pele-principles were adopted by all staff members.

EDEN District Municipality

Economic Development and Tourism

HESSEQUA IDP

Hessequa Municipality will seek access to advice and finance available through Provincial and National schemes. The Red Door project will be fully supported.

Maximum work opportunities must be extracted from new development. There will be a specific focus on business opportunities in the previously disadvantaged areas.

Hessequa Municipality intends to promote "developmental tourism" and involve those previously excluded in tourism ventures. In addition, the whole value chain linked to tourism will provide opportunities for sourcing more goods and services locally.

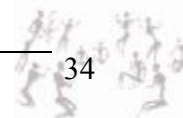
EDEN District Municipality

Community, Social and Human Capital Development

HESSEQUA IDP

The Hessequa Municipality will implement the Hessequa HIV/AIDS Programmes, based on the deliberations of the Hessequa HIV/AIDS Summit, in which EDEN DM participated. The Municipality will assist stakeholders to put a Hessequa AIDS Forum in place where after a partnership will be forged.

Hessequa Municipality intends to promote and create an enabling environment for





social capital to flourish through the successful implementation of a Local Social Development Strategy.

Hessequa IDP provides for the management and implementation of the Disaster Management Plan.

Hessequa Municipality through its IDP intends to implement a Youth and Gender Development Programme based on deliberation of the Hessequa Social Development Summit and Hessequa Youth Summit.

A policy to provide affordable and accessible services for the elderly will be developed.

EDEN District Municipality

Infrastructure, Public Works and Transport development

HESSEQUA IDP

The Hessequa Municipality as part of its efforts to draft a credible 2nd generation IDP, just completed an Infrastructure Investment Report. It includes a medium to long-term demand assessment of services required. It included an assessment of all relevant reports and masters plans, including those of EDEN DM, pertaining to Hessequa, produced over the last 3-5 years.

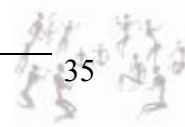
EDEN District Municipality

Environmental Management and Spatial Development

HESSEQUA IDP

Hessequa Municipality will increase its efforts to conserve the sensitive ecosystems on which Hessequa relies. This means working with public and private property owners, NGO's and environmental specialists.

The reviewed spatial plan (SDF) will be completed to guide appropriate development. This specifically includes extensive land uses, conservation planning as well as a specific focus on rural development.





3.2.6. Summary

Millennium Development Goals	ASGISA	IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO	WESTERN CAPE SDF	EDEN DM IDP	HESSEQUA 2027	I N T E G R A T E D D E V E L O P M E N T P L A N
Eradicate extreme poverty and hunger	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sector investments • 2nd Economy issues 	Micro economic strategy	Align future settlement patterns with economic potential	Dev appropriate regional eco that ensures safe, healthy and vibrant communities		
Achieve universal primary education	Skills and Education initiatives	Building human capital with an emphasis on youth	Deliver human dev and basic needs programme	Develop human and social capital by investing in woman & youth		
Promote gender equality and empower woman				Dev human and social capital by investing in woman and youth		
Reduce child mortality		Building social capital with an emphasis on youth		Dev human and social capital by investing in woman and youth		
Improve maternal health		Building social capital with an emphasis on youth		Create an enabling environment that ensures safe, healthy & vibrant communities		
Combat HIV/AIDS, malaria and other diseases		Building social capital with an emphasis on youth		Create an enabling environment that ensures safe, healthy & vibrant communities		
Ensure environmental sustainability		Provincial spatial development framework	Protect biodiversity and agricultural resources	Sustain Eden environment through resource conservation		
Develop a global partnership for development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infrastructure programmes • Public 	Strategic infrastructure investment	Conveniently locate urban activities and promote public and non motorized transport	Ensure effective & affordable service & infrastructure delivery		





CHAPTER 4: SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

At the heart of Hessequa's 2027 vision and development goals lies the principle of stewardship, of taking responsibility for our own future and custodianship of our children's future, reconnecting with each other and the place where we live.

Within the context of sustainability we accept that human needs must be met in ways that will not erode our potential to meet the needs of future generation.

By integrating the principles of sustainability into every aspect of community development we demonstrate our commitment to a resilient, healthy and enduring community, which will have a high quality life for all who live in Hessequa into perpetuity

Our Sustainability Framework is guided by the following principles:

- Promoting greater equity in wealth and land distribution;
- Satisfaction of fundamental human needs;
- Job creation through economic development and investment strategies;
- Incorporation of biophysical and ecological limits in planning and decision-making;
- Conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity and other natural resources;
- Sustainable living within peaceful economically viable communities;
- Recognition of the innate cultural beauty and spiritual healing value of nature for all;
- Adoption of the precautionary principle in decision-making;
- Internalisation of environmental and social costs in the design and operation of production and consumption systems;
- Co-operative governance through vertical and horizontal co-ordination;
- Promotion of partnerships between social partners;
- Promotion of access to information, transparency, and accountability;
- Empowered participation by civil society;
- Promotion of environmental, social and economic justice;
- Mainstreaming sustainability principles into all policies, plans and decision-making;
- Ongoing monitoring, evaluation and reporting;
- Promotion of education and capacity building for sustainable development.

Our approach towards sustainable development in Hessequa

As custodians of our children's' future we aim to re-establish our balance with nature by adopting a localised approach which harnesses the bounty of available resources without compromising the integrity of critical ecosystems; protects, manages, maintain and regenerate natural capital within pre-determined thresholds, recognising our interdependence and interconnectedness to all other living entities and systems; growing our per capita wealth as manifested in our quality of life, as a consequence of adopting a differentiating and equitable developmental strategy which incorporates technology appropriate to the available skills of our people; developing our social and human capital and creating sustainable neighbourhoods which remain firmly embedded in a strong sense of place and our unique identity; guided by a shared vision and value system





which respects all life, cultural and biological diversity; driven by the will of the people in honour of our common ancestry and the spirit of our humanity.

SECTION: B SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

CHAPER 5: HISTORY, DEMOGRAPHICS AND WARD ANALYSIS

5.1. OUR HISTORY

The present and future are of course inextricably products of the past. To set a course for our future we must first understand our past and the forces, which have shaped this extraordinary place and forged the people with whom we share her bounty.

Hessequa is the gently curving edge of the continent just east of the southern-most tip of Africa. She nestles at the foot of the Langeberg Mountains with her boundaries stretching along the Southern Cape coast from the Breede River to Gouritsmond. A region rich in natural beauty with rolling hills of pristine limestone and mountain fynbos, dune thicket and Renosterveld and to the north surrounded with rugged mountains and indigenous forests. Pristine beaches stretch the entire length of her coastline. Her cornucopia of ecological assets include four estuaries, a world heritage forest site, several nature reserves which guard a number of rare and endangered floral species and even a very special little frog.

Over 1 200 plant species have been recorded in the Southern Langeberg with 9% of these recorded as having threatened plant status. Perennial rivers support a high degree of biodiversity and nourish her rich and abundant bird and sea life. But her true significance lies not only in her rich ecological assets but also in her extraordinary archaeological heritage. Here, more than 75 000 years ago man crossed the great divide between being an animal merely bent on survival and becoming a sentient, reasoning being. Here, creativity and innovation were born, as evidenced by research findings at Blombos Cave. This is the Cradle of the Human Mind. The significance of the Blombos discoveries is not limited to defining the pivotal point in our evolution; it also confirms that all men originated from Africa. Thus everyone who has ever lived and is still to be born has a link with Hessequa. Ancient fish traps are found along the coast, many which are fully functional and productive, unique rock art sites such as the 'cave of hand' are found in the Langeberg. Here man lived in complete harmony with nature for 75000 years, the longest record of sustainable living on earth.

For thousands of year's hunter-gatherers, the ancestors of the San, inhabited this area, living of the bounty of the sea, rivers and veldt. Around three thousand years ago, the Khoi-Khoi who were herders, moved into Hessequa. They brought with them the first sheep and later cattle and may be regarded as the area's first agriculturalists.

It is only after the Dutch colonised the Cape in 1652 that the balance of sustainable use started to shift. First the trek Boers took up freehold on land, which never belonged to man. Disease and the aggressive policies of the colonists resulted in the eventual demise of the Khoi-Khoi and San. With the balance of power in the hands of the colonists a culture of dependence and servitude devoid of responsibility became the hallmark of the KhoiSan. . In the early 19th century, existence farming changed to commercial farming as wool became a major export product to European markets and so marks the beginning of commercial farming in Hessequa. The first town to be





established was Riverdale, followed by Heidelberg and lastly Albertinia. As agriculture prospered so did the towns.

Modern day Hessequa is still a predominantly rural agricultural region with the main products being commodities such as wool, sheep, grain, thatch, and milk. The towns no longer benefit from agriculture as the traditional relationship has been eroded with the increased exposure of agriculture to global markets and the fact that value was added elsewhere. Slowly but surely markets of proximity became markets of globality.

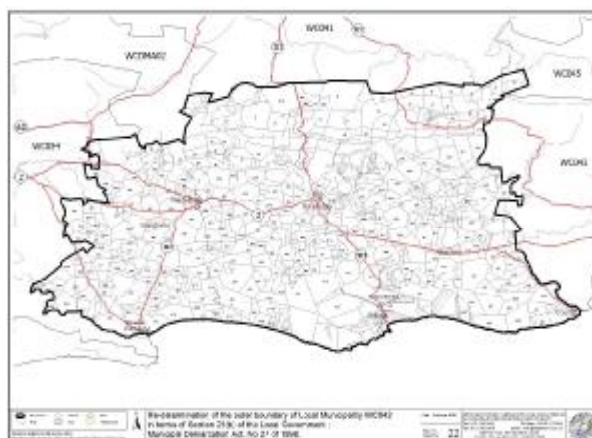
The rise of tourism in the last half century has resulted in the establishment of four coastal towns namely Witsand, Jongensfontein, Stilbaai and Gouritsmond. This has led to a real estate boom as these towns become prime targets for investment in holiday homes. The natural beauty, access to basic good healthcare and lack of crime has since also attracted permanent residents mainly pre-retirement people to the coastal towns. The construction industry was strengthened as a result, but as a consequence of the rapid growth and subsequent demand for skilled labour has led to a commuting workforce, which drives vast distances every day from the inland towns to earn a living. Lack of planning and unexpected growth in all the towns but especially along the coast has led to extreme pressure on infrastructure and water supply. The legacy of apartheid is still with spatial as well as social integration and remains a major challenge.

The urban population is growing whilst the rural population is declining. Rural depopulation is closely linked with agricultural dynamics. Young people leave the municipal area to seek opportunities elsewhere whilst the area is particularly rich in elderly people, partly as a result of the immigration of elderly people to Hessequa. Few children in Hessequa are involved in post-matric studies; young people have to leave the area if they want to obtain further training/education.

Elementary jobs dominate and Hessequa has a high percentage of trained agricultural workers. Many elderly residents in Hessequa have degrees but most are no longer economically active. Significant portions of Hessequans live below the poverty line. There are pockets of extreme poverty, for example in Kwanokuthula in Riversdale and in Slangrivier. Land ownership is almost exclusively in the hands of whites. There are a number of small PDI farmer initiatives, but these are mostly struggling because of a lack of experience, strategic planning, resources and help. Land reform has grinded to a halt and it seems unlikely that the 30% target for 2014 can be met

5.2.DEMOGRAPHICS

Originally the Hessequa Municipality, WC042, consisted of six local municipalities that amalgamated in December 2000 to form geographically the biggest local municipality in the Eden District. Now the Hessequa Municipality is divided into eight electoral wards. Hessequa have three coastal towns and four inland towns. The Hessequa Economy is mostly dependent on agricultural activities.



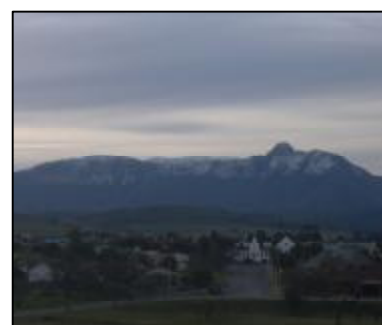


With communities relatively far from each other and central service delivery nodes, there is a huge institutional challenge on the Hessequa Municipality to ensure that development meets the needs of the communities. It is also of utmost importance to get a clear picture of the current circumstances faced by individuals, and the individuals themselves, in each of the eight wards of Hessequa.



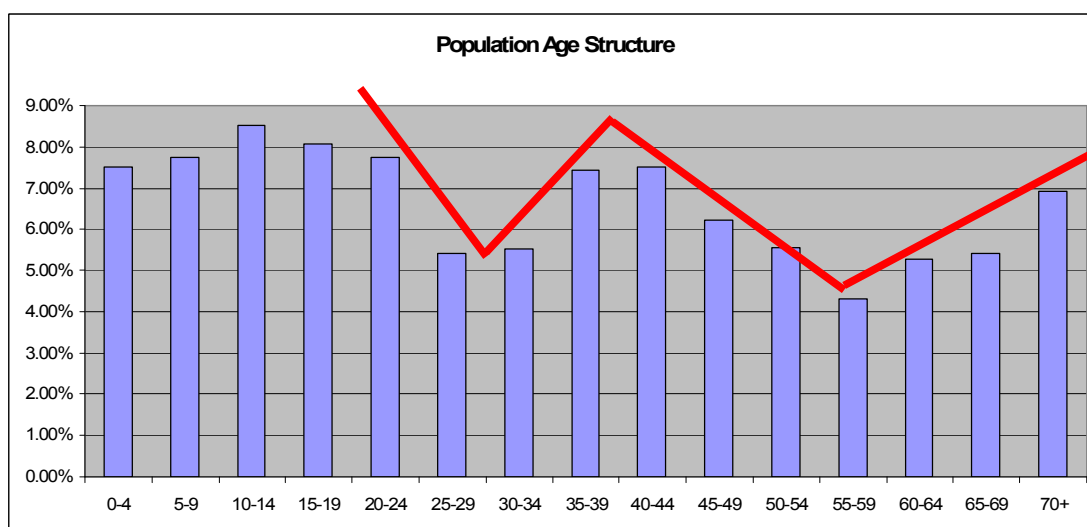
This profile is aimed at getting an understanding of Hessequa Municipality in a comparative analysis of the wards. This input for the Hessequa Integrated Development Plan is based primarily on the statistics received from a survey done by the Eden District Municipality throughout Eden on a very large scale.

The findings of this survey are very significant to Hessequa as we only have demographic information from 2001 census. We have experienced immense changes in all our communities during the past few years as well as in the different sectors that are the building blocks for our communal well-being. Some sectors have been asking for more resources, but were unable to prove their growing need. These statistics are shedding new light on the dynamics of the wards in Hessequa Municipality.



Population of Hessequa

The following chart displays the age break-up of Hessequa's population. These statistics prove the loss of the developing labour force, meaning that skills are not developed in Hessequa, as well as the loss in experienced labour. These trends are reflected in each ward's statistics.



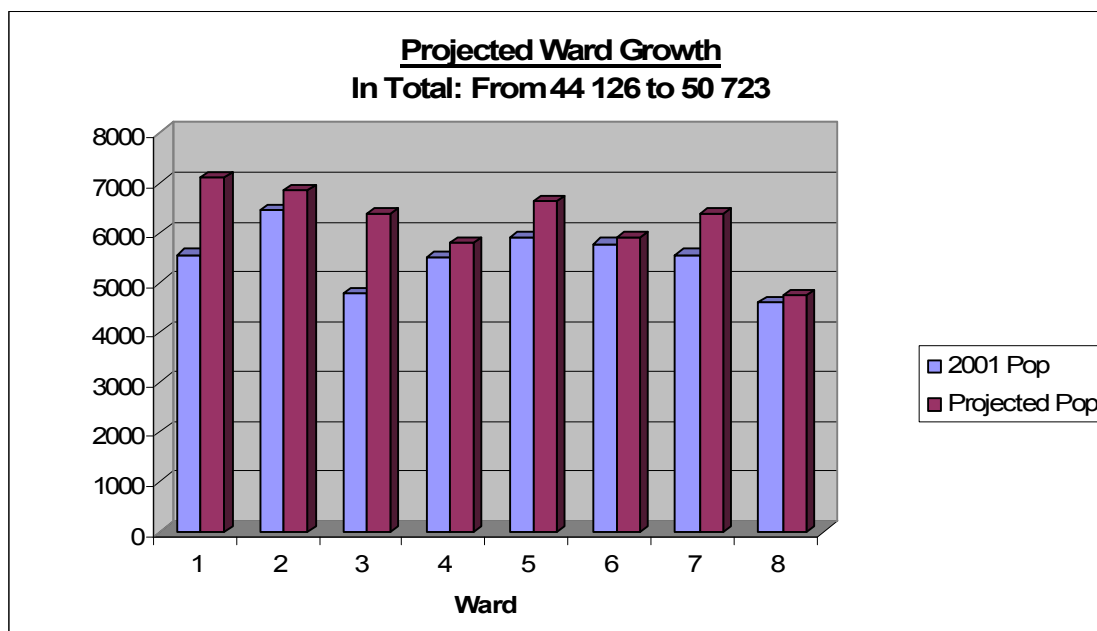


MUNICIPALITY HESSEQUA WARD COMPARISON

Ward	Ward Demography	Household Count	% of Municipality	Ward Area [km ²]	Density [People/km ²]
Ward 1	4933	1 276	12.79	710.45	6.94
Ward 2	5161	1 484	13.38	1001.15	5.16
Ward 3	3833	1 322	9.94	1530.27	2.50
Ward 4	5240	1 182	13.59	1010.06	5.19
Ward 5	5285	1 285	13.70	24.52	215.54
Ward 6	5272	1 313	13.67	1233.877	4.27
Ward 7	4214	1 006	10.93	219.48	19.20
Ward 8	4628	877	12.00	1.25	3702.40
	38566	9 744	100	5731.057	

SOURCE: Table 06 - 19: Demarcationboard: 2003

The following chart indicates a projected ward growth from 2001. This information is based on the ward demarcations from 2001 and then projected by using the growth rate of households in each separate ward to get a projected population count. This clearly indicates the huge growth in certain wards, especially coastal regions, implicating the need for infrastructure development. Also a reasonable amount of growth in poorer communities, implicating the growth in social need as well.





5.3. WARD ANALYSIS: WARD COUNCILLORS AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT WORKERS

5.3.1. Ward 1 – Cnr. Swanepoel

1. VISION:

“Blazing jewel of peace and tranquility in the Hessequa Empire”

2. PROFILE

2.1 Location:

- South eastern corner of the Hessequa Municipality
- Area covers 710 km²
- Bordered by the Gourits River in the East, N2 National Road in the North, Goukou River in the West and the coastal line in the South.



2.2 Towns or residential areas:

- i. Bitouville
- ii. Gouritsmond
- iii. Melkhoutfontein
- iv. Stilbaai East
- v. Part of Stilbaai West
- vi. Rural (farming) area

2.3 Demographics (2001 Census)

- Population count: 4 933
- Households: 1 276

2.4 Socio-economic statistics (2006 survey)

- i. Age structure

5 – 19:	19%
20 – 39:	23%;
40 – 59:	22%
60+:	30%

- ii. Educational level

None:	3%;
Grade 0 – 7:	21%;
Grade 8-11:	29%;
Matric:	28%;
Diploma:	7%;
Tertiary:	10%

- iii. Employment status

Paid employee:	40%;
Self-employed:	7%
Unemployed:	53%



- iv. Sector analysis:
 - Formal sector: 34%;
 - Informal sector: 11%;
 - In private service: 53%

- v. Monthly household income
 - Below R1 600: 28%
 - Above R1 600: 57%
 - Not available: 15%

- vi. Sources of household income
 - Wages and salaries: 48%
 - Private pension/investments 30%
 - State pension and grants: 12%;**

- vii. Dependant on grants
 - Grants: 16%;
 - No grants: 84%**

2.5 Economic drivers

- i. Agriculture and fishing
- ii. **Retail trade**
- iii. **Catering and accommodation**
- iv. Construction
- v. Transport, storage and communication
- vi. Finance, insurance, real estate and business services

3. FOCUS AREAS: CHALLENGES AND KEY PRIORITIES

3.1 Basic infrastructure

3.1.1 Water

Challenges

- i. Temporary shortages over festive seasons
- ii. Quality not everywhere on standard
- iii. Present capacity will be exhausted by 2010
- iv. Envisaged new residential developments pose a big threat
- v. Master plan for sustained provision is lacking
- vi. Master plan for maintenance of water related infrastructure is lacking

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan for provision of water (sectoral plan)
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for water related infrastructure
- iii. Improve quality through enhanced treatment processes to adhere to SABS standards
- iv. Research, exploit and introduce new sources, for example rain water, new boreholes, desalination of seawater, treatment and recycling of water waste, etc.





3.1.2 Electricity

Challenges

- i. Master plan for sustained provision lacking
- ii. Master plan for maintenance of electricity related infrastructure is lacking
- iii. Existing capacity in Stilbaai will be exceeded by 2010
- iv. Demand in Stilbaai exceeds capacity regularly in festive season
- v. Demand in Melkhoutfontein constantly exceeds registered demand

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral plan) for electricity provision
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for electricity related infrastructure
- iii. Upgrade and extend networks
- iv. Apply for increased demand in Gouritsmond
- v. Electrification of low cost housing in Bitouville
- vi. Electrification of Driefontein and surrounding farms
- vii. Provide street lighting for those streets in Melkhoutfontein without lighting
- viii. Provide lighting for “Die Poort” and “Kerkgronde” in Melkhoutfontein
- ix. Investigate alternative energy sources like sun, wind and gulf power

3.1.3 Sanitation and refuse removal

Challenges

- i. Complete sewerage project in Stilbaai before December 2007
- ii. Dumping site at Melkhoutfontein illegal and poses health risks
- iii. Poor control over the disposal of fish, abattoir, medical, industrial and other hazardous waste

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral plan) for sewerage and refuse removal
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for sewerage related infrastructure
- iii. Investigate central dumping site for ward or whole Municipality
- iv. Expedite management plans for the treatment and recycling of solid waste
- v. Foster and promote cleaning campaigns

3.1.4 Streets, kerbing and pavements

Challenges

- i. Potholes in many streets
- ii. Kerbing in some residential areas lacking
- iii. Sustainable up keeping of pavements





Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral plan) for streets, kerbing and pavements
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for streets, kerbing and pavements
- iii. Expedite paving of dust and gravel roads

3.1.5 Traffic, roads and transport

Challenges

- i. Traffic flow poses problems in coastal towns during holiday seasons
- ii. Curtail drivers exceeding speed limits
- iii. No public transport between Bitouville, Albertinia and Mossel Bay.

Key priorities

- i. Continue effective point service during holidays
- ii. Continue effective speed monitoring
- iii. Implement speed calming by means of private monitoring
- iv. Consider modest and inexpensive traffic circle at intersection of Highway West and Buitekant Street (Fynbos Centre)
- v. Provide slipways in Highway West at intersection with Orchid Drive and at entrance to Bosbokkloof in Stilbaai West
- vi. Provide two definite lanes in both directions at bridge over Goukou River in Highway East in Stilbaai East
- vii. Urge authorities to upgrade Hectorskraal, Melkhoutkraal, Ystervarkfontein and Gouriqua gravel roads
- viii. Determine or establish access roads through private properties to coastal zones
- ix. Expedite erection of circular road (by-pass) to Jongensfontein
- x. Demarcate bus stops and taxi ranks
- xi. Urge (pressurise?) Provincial Authorities and EDM to implement public transport service between Bitouville, Albertinia and Mossel Bay.

3.1.6 Storm water drainage

Challenges

- i. Drainage in Gouritsmond a disaster during heavy rains

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral plan) for storm water and drainage
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for storm water and drainage related infrastructure
- iii. Find sustainable solution for storm water and drainage problems in Gouritsmond

3.2 Human settlements

Challenges





- i. Eradicate backlog in provision of housing
- ii. Provide bulk infrastructure services

Key priorities

- i. Build 60 new units in Bitouville in 2007/08 and 2008/09
- ii. Build 800 new units in Melkhoutfontein in 2009/10
- iii. Provide bulk infrastructure services
- iv. Plan and implement high density housing schemes in Gouritsmond and Stilbaai

3.3 Local economic development

Challenges

- i. Alleviation and eventually total eradication of poverty
- ii. Sustainable job creation
- iii. Promotion of BEE
- iv. Provision of strategic direction and leadership to prospective entrepreneurs
- v. Utilisation of opportunities and benefits pertaining to tourist related business
- vi. Beneficiation (value adding) to primary products

Key priorities

- i. Promote and enhance value adding to primary products (commodities)
- ii. Grow first (formal) economy by means of training, coaching and mentorship
- iii. Support second (informal) economy by means of training, coaching and mentorship
- iv. Provide extension incentives to existing businesses
- v. Provide incentives to attract and locate new businesses
- vi. Formalize, introduce, develop and support small scale farmers
- vii. Utilize mentors from ranks of knowledgeable retirees
- viii. Draw up master plan for economic utilization of N2
- ix. Determine tourist potential
- x. Formulate and implement strategies to exploit, promote, market and reap benefits of vast tourist potential

3.4 Social and welfare development

Challenges

- i. Insufficient suitable recreation facilities for youth
- ii. Insufficient camping and recreation facilities for day campers over holiday seasons
- iii. Sports facilities not everywhere up to standard
- iv. Youth development and curtailment of drug abuse
- v. Primary schools over crowded
- vi. No secondary school
- vii. Lack of sufficient infrastructure for the nurture of indigent senior citizens (retirement accommodation, medical and recreational facilities)
- viii. Combat HIV/AIDS/TB





- ix. Protection, development and upliftment of vulnerable groups

Key priorities

- i. Create suitable recreation facilities for youth
- ii. Create infrastructure in collaboration with the private sector for nurturing indigent senior citizens, for example retirement accommodation, medical, sport, other recreational and transport facilities
- iii. Create or convert existing buildings into multipurpose community centres in Bitouville and Melkhoutfontein
- iv. Apply for available outside funds to erect crèches in Melkhoutfontein and Bitouville
- v. Raise issues pertaining to medical and ambulance services with higher authorities and EDM
- vi. Upgrade and extend existing or erect additional ablution, camping, picnic and other facilities at seaside resorts, camps and parks
- vii. Upgrade and extend existing or erect additional public amenities in public areas
- viii. Upgrade the tidal pool in Gouritsmond
- ix. Provide sufficient picnic and camping facilities and related amenities at Voëlklip (Gouritsmond)
- x. Canvas for establishment of a secondary school
- xi. Extend structures and facilities according to demand
- xii. Introduce sustainable livelihoods in Melkhoutfontein
- xiii. Nurture, develop and support vulnerable groups
- x. Combat HIV/AIDS/TB with suitable Programmes and awareness campaigns
- xi. Upgrade and extend bowling greens and facilities in Stilbaai, inter-alia to attract, train, develop and cater for youth and PDI bowlers.

3.5 Environmental development

Challenges

- i. Conserve, preserve, nurture, and promote our natural and cultural heritage

Key priorities

- i. Conserve and maintain nature reserves and private parks
- ii. Provide new and extend existing hiking routes and trails
- iii. Apply effective and efficient management of the Goukou and Gourits Rivers and their estuaries
- iv. Formulate master plan to curtail developments along coast line and rivers
- v. Formulate master plan for conserving natural habitat
- vi. Draw up master disaster management plan, including flood control and the control of veld fires





5.3.2.Ward 2 – Cnr Manho

THE HOUSE OF THE ALOE in Connection with the I.D.P.



1. VISION

1. to better the lives of the people in Albertinia;
2. to develop economic growth in the community;
3. to eradicate all forms of poverty;
4. to create a safe and secure home for all citizens in ward 2
5. to introduce all governmental Programmes; projects and services to the community.

2. PROFILE

Location

- a. Albertinia is a developing town, situated on the N2 between Riversdale on the east and Mossel Bay on the western side.
- b. The town had it's origin with the Aloe and Feen that is indigenous for this area.
- c. The town is 105 years old now and there is a railway station that is nearly as old as the town.

Residential areas

- a. Theronville
- b. Rainbow Village
- c. Town
- d. Rural Farming Areas

Demographics (2001 Census)

- | | |
|----------------------|------|
| a. Population count | 7200 |
| b. Registered Voters | 2669 |

2.4 Socio-economic statistics

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------|
| a. Educational level | |
| None | 9,03% |
| Grade 0 | 4,68% |
| Grade 1 – 7 | 23,24% |
| Grade 8 – 11 | 35,62% |
| Grade 12 | 18,39% |
| Diploma no Matric | 0,17% |
| Certificate no Matric | 0,67% |
| Diploma with Matric | 0,50% |
| Technikon degree | 0,67% |
| University degree | 1,00% |
| b. Employment status | |
| Paid employee | 37,79% |
| Self-employed | 1,71% |
| Employer | 0,00% |
| Unemployed | 57,23% |
| c. Sector analysis | |
| Formal sector | 72,49% |





Informal sector	18,59%
Private Service	6,32%
d. Monthly household income	
None	1,12%
R 1 – R 400	4,87%
R 401 – R 800	7,12%
R 801 – R 1600	43,45%
R 1601 – R 3200	27,72%
R 3201 – R 6400	9,36%
R 6401 – R 12800	2,25%
R 12801 – R 25 600	1,12%
R 25600+	0,75%
e. Dependent on grants	
Grants	28,39%
No Grants	71,61%

2.5 Economic drivers

- Building Contractors
- Supply Employment
- Aloe Factories

3 FOCUS AREAS : CHALLENGES AND KEY PRIORITIES

3.1. Technical Services

Challenges

- Traffic is a problem in ward 2, as no traffic officials are visible, only in holidays.
- Speed- bumps can be built to stop speeding.
- No transport available between the town and Theronville.
- Road conditions are a matter of concern.
- The gravel roads need to be upgraded.
- Storage of water is a problem.
- Quality of water is a matter of concern.
- Sewerage system needs to be upgraded.

Key Priorities

- The road conditions are a matter of concern in ward 2. They need to be upgraded. The eradication of all the gravel-roads, to be upgraded into paving of roads is the answer to sustainable roads.
- Water and sanitation is also a need.
- The sewerage system also needs to be upgraded.
- Building new reservoir.

3.2. Housing





Challenges

- In this ward there is a waiting list with more than 800 beneficiaries awaiting houses.
- To promote home ownership.
- To educate beneficiaries about home ownership.

Key priorities

- Development nearer to the N2 can be a possibility to solve the problem and an alternative for development in the future.
- Provide bulk infrastructure services
- To provide enough land for housing.
- To provide housing for the middle income group.

3.3. Local Economic Development

Challenges

- Unemployment
- A few entrepreneurs started businesses with the R20 000.00 projects from the municipality.
- Some applications and business plans went through to Red Door, but they are very slow in processing the proposals.
- Some entrepreneurs are willing to go out in the field and farms to tap aloe and reap some fees to be economic active. They are undertaking the hard work and the farmers have to get their share of the product.
- The establishment of a BBBEE in the Tourism and Agriculture is an important challenge in this ward.

Key priorities

- Skills and development Programmes to learn to fish -not only receive a fish without work)
- Promote all funding institutions like Red Door, Khula and Ntsika.

3.4 Social and Welfare development

Challenges

- Social problems in ward 2 are teenage pregnancy and substance abuse.
- Establishing a youth forum is a need to get our youth busy, especially over weekends.
- The full development of the Sport Complex will be a positive move as there is a need for such a building, which can also be used for other events.

Key priorities





There are many ways to get our community, especially our youth occupied.

- We need a soccer field, netball fields, a pavilion, the second field needs to be finished and the Club house needs to be enlarged.
- More toilets need to be built.
- Educate and assist the community with HIV/Aids and other sexual diseases.

3.5 Environmental development

Challenges

- This is one of our biggest challenges in the ward, due to the following:
 - The lack of proper education.
 - No Programme to establish green areas.

Key priorities

- To establish more parks and playgrounds.
- Project to save endangered animals and plant species.
- Establish an educational plan for preserving the environment.

4. Implementation

- A recommendation could be to renovate the Mossgas- building into a skills & development centre.
- Develop north & south of the N2.
- With the help of the Dept. of Tourism, develop a hiking trail to the areas where Bushmen drawing were found. Some skeletons were found at the start & stop point - a Proudly South –African restaurant would be a suggestion.
- To make use of our own artisans & labourers to build a pavilion at our Sports Complex. It can be a project that creates a sense of pride among our citizens.
- The building which is currently used as a community hall can be renovated into a venue which can also accommodate our youth and elderly people.

5. Challenges

- Challenge one would be to eradicate all forms of poverty in our ward by means of creating economic activities.
- Promote entrepreneurship in the community.
- To wipe out unemployment by letting the LED go its way.
- Stop moral degeneration like teenage pregnancy and substance abuse in our ward.
- To ensure efficient service delivery in ward 2.
- Another challenge would be to introduce all governmental Programmes to the community, e.g. E.P.W.P. etc.
- To create a safe home for all in the Hessequa Municipal area.



5.3.3.Ward 3 - Cnr Bouwer

1. VISION

“A self reliant, prosperous community at peace with itself in harmony with nature



2. PROFILE OR BACKGROUND

2.1. Location

Ward 3 is one of the Wards of Hessequa Municipality which includes a vast rural Area. Unemployment is a concern in this Ward and lack of development of people, specifically young people.

2.2. Towns or residential areas:

- I. Vermaaklikheid
- II. Jongensfontein
- III. Part of Stillbaai West
- IV. Rural (Farming) Area

2.3. Demographics (2001 Census)

a. Population count : 4500

2.4. Socio-economic statistics (2006 survey)

Gender	
Male	50,12%
Female	49,88%
Home Language	
Afrikaans	(88,93%)
English	(9,37%)
IsiXhosa	(1,37%)
Zulu	(0,36%)
Educational Level	
None	(3,44%)
Grade 0-7	(24,40%)
Grade 8-11	(14,60%)
Matric	(27,84%)
Diploma	(4,81%)
Tertiary	(15,81%)
Employment status	
Paid employee	(43,10%)
Self-employed	(8,45%)
Unemployed	(9,90%)

Sector Analysis





Formal sector	(95,07%)
Informal sector	(4,03%)
In private service	

Monthly household income	
Below R 1 600	(?)
Above R 1 600	(?)
Not available	(?)

Sources of household income	
Wages and Salaries	(53,17%)
Private pension /investments	(14,08%)
State pension and grants	(8,45%)

Dependant on grants	
Grants	(16,30%)
No grants	(83,70%)

2.5. Economic drivers

- i. Agricultural and fishing
- ii. Retail trade
- iii. Catering and accommodation
- iv. Construction
- v. Transport, storage and accommodation
- vi. Finance, insurance, real estate and business services

3. FOCUS AREAS: CHALLENGES AND KEY PRIORITIES

3.1. Basic Infrastructure

3.1.1. Water

Challenges

- i. Temporary shortage over festive season
- ii. Quality not on standard
- iii. Present capacity will be exhausted by 2010
- iv. Envisaged new residential developments pose a big threat

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan for the provision of water (sectoral plan)
- ii. Improve quality through enhanced treatment processes to adhere to SABS standards.
- iii. Research, exploit and introduce new sources for example rain water, new boreholes, desalination of seawater, treatment and recycling of water waste etc.

3.1.2. Electricity

Challenges



- i. Master plan for sustainable provision lacking
- ii. Existing capacity in Stillbaai will be exceeded by 2010
- iii. Demand in Stillbaai exceeds capacity regularly in festive season Vredesaal in Vermaaklikheid.

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral plan) for electricity provision
- ii. Upgrade and extend networks
- iii. Investigate alternative power sources like sun, wind and gulf

3.1.3. Sanitation and refuse removal

Challenges

- i. Complete sewerage project in Stillbaai before December 2007
- ii. Dumping Site at Vermaaklikheid and Jongensfontein
- iii. Poor control over the disposal of fish and medical waste
- iv. Urgent attention to sewerage at Skoolkop Vermaaklikheid
- v. Complete sewerage system phase 3 Jongensfontein

Key Priorities.

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral) for sewerage and refuse removal
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for sewerage related infrastructure
- iii. Investigate central dumping site for Ward or whole Municipality
- iv. Treatment and recycling of waste for whole area (EDEN)

3.1.4. Streets, kerbing and pavement

Challenges

- i. Potholes in many streets
- ii. Kerbing in some residential areas lacking

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral plan) for streets, kerbing and pavements
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for streets, kerbing and pavements
- iii. Expedite paving of dust and gravel roads
- iv. Revisit maintenance plan

3.1.5 Traffic, roads and transport

Challenges

- i. Traffic flow poses problems in coastal towns during holiday season
- ii. Curtail drivers exceeding speed limits
- iii. No public transport between Vermaaklikheid and Riversdale





Key priorities

- i. Continue effective point service during holidays
- ii. Continue effective speed monitoring
- iii. Speed calming by means of private monitoring
- iv. Upgrade of Vermaaklikheid to Riversdale and Vermaaaklikheid to Stillbaai roads
- v. Determine or establish access roads through private properties to coastal zones
- vi. Demarcation of bus stops and taxi ranks

3.1.6. Storm water drainage

Challenges

- i. Not up to standard or installed everywhere

Key priorities

- i. Finalize and implement master plan (sectoral plan) for storm water and drainage
- ii. Finalize and implement maintenance plan for storm water and drainage infrastructure.

3.2. Human Settlements

Challenges

- i. Complete housing in Vermaaklikheid
- ii. Backlog of housing for people in lower income groups

Key priorities

- i. Complete houses Skoolkop Vermaaklikheid
- ii. Plan and implement compact housing schemes for people in lower income groups

3.3. Local economic Development

Challenges

- i. Alleviation of poverty
- ii. Promotion of BEE
- iii. Provision of strategic direction and leadership to prospective entrepreneurs.
- iv. Utilization of opportunities and benefits associated with tourist attractions.

Key priorities

- i. Value adding to primary agricultural products
- ii. Support second (informal) economy, by means of training, coaching and mentorship.
- iii. Growing first (formal) economy by means of training, coaching and mentorship
- iv. Provide extension incentives to existing businesses





- v. Provide incentives for attracting / locating new businesses
- vi. Determine tourist potential
- vii. Formulate and implement strategies to exploit tourist potential
- viii. Market tourist attractions
- ix. Utilize mentors from ranks of knowledge retirees

3.4. Social and Welfare Development

Challenges

- i. Insufficient suitable recreation facilities for youth
- ii. Insufficient camping and recreation facilities for day, campers over holiday season specially Vermaaklikheid
- iii. Sports facilities not everywhere up to standard
- iv. Youth development and curtailment of drugs abuse
- v. Lack of sufficient infrastructure for the nurture of indigent senior citizens (retirement accommodation, medical and recreational facilities)
- vi. Combat HIV/AIDS/TB.

Key priorities

- i. Create suitable recreation facilities for youth
- ii. Create infrastructure in collaboration with private sector to nurture indigent senior citizens, for examples retirement accommodation, medical, sport other recreational and transport facilities.
- iii. Upgrade and extension of ablution and other facilities at seaside resorts, camps and parks
- iv. Upgrade and extension of public amenities in public areas
- v. Upgrade of tidal pool in Jongensfontein
- vi. Provision of sufficient picnic and camping facilities and related amenities at Vermaaklikheid
- vii. Canvas for erection of secondary school for Ward 1 and 3
- viii. Combat HIV/AIDS/TB

3.5. Environmental Development

Challenges

- i. Conserve (Preserve) our heritage

Key Priorities

- i. Conservation and maintenance of nature reserves
- ii. Provide new and extend existing hiking route trails
- iii. Formulate master plan to curtail developments along coast line and river edges
- iv. Formulate master plan for conserving natural habitat.



5.3.4.Ward 4 – Cnr Esau



1. VISION:
“The Gateway to the Hessequa and the Garden Route”

2. WARD PROFILE:

2.1.Background-

Ward 4 is based in the Hessequa area and it consists of residential areas such as Witsand, Joe-Slovo, Slangrivier and surrounding farms. Each of these areas has a unique history that can contribute to the development of the ward and the Hessequa Municipal area.

2.2.Socio-economic statistics (Eden Survey 2006)

Gender:

Male : 47.21%
Female : 52.79 %

Population Groups:

Black : 0.95 %
Coloured : 93.09 %
White : 5.58 %
Other : 0.38 %

Language:

Afrikaans : 98.20 %
English 5.58 %
I siXhosa : 0.28 %

Educational levels:

None : 37.14 %
Pre-School : 6.80 %
Primary school : 41.99 %
Secondary S ; 11.41 %
Tertiary : 0.24 %

Employment Status:

Paid employee : 31.09 %
Self-employed : 2.59 %
Unemployed : 63.51 %

Sector Analysis:

Formal sector: 9.77 %
Informal Sector : 41.80 %
Private services: 47.27 %

Monthly household income:

Below R800-R1 600 45.83 %
Above R1 600 22.73 %



Dependents on Grants:

Grants :	30 %
No Grants:	70 %

2.3.Economic Drivers :

- The main source for the economical drivers is in the agricultural sector.
- Accommodation and Catering
- Transport.
- Fishing.
- Real estate.

3.FOCUS AREAS : CHALLENGES AND KEY PRIOTIES

3.1. Basic Infrastructure :

3.1.1. Water

Challenges:

- No major problems occur, only temporary interruptions, but not for long periods.
- Some of the residents have no access to water, because they can't afford the installation fee.

Key priorities:

- Provide bulk infrastructure
- Affordable installation fee to poor households.
- Alternative services in the case of water interruptions.
- Upgrading of water infrastructure, especially for the housing project Slangrivier.
- A reservoir to increase water storage capacity.

3.1.2. Electricity :

Challenges:

Electricity is provided by Eskom in the Slangrivier area

- Lack of Accessibility to Installation of electricity.
- No proper response on complains or faults
- Electricity interruptions for long periods
- Problems with the street lights
- Some residential areas, such as Bo-Kraal, Bokkieskraal, De Kloof and Klipkrans (in Slangrivier) have no street lights.

Key Priorities:





- Provide street lighting for those areas in Slangrivier
- Eskom needs to upgrade their electricity network (distribution) and further investigation needs to be done.
- A proper service delivery plan must be in place.
- Every household must have access to electricity by 2010.
- Proper electricity related infrastructure must be in place for the Housing Project-2010 in Slangrivier.
- Electricity for Rural areas.

3.1.3. Sanitation and refuse removal:

Challenges:

- 40 % of the residents still uses the “bucket –and the put system”
- A Small percentage doesn't have access to sanitation facilities.
- Illegal dumping sites in residential areas.

Key Priorities:

- Eradicate the “bucket –and put system”
- Flush toilets for every household and on the rural areas (Farms)
- Eradicate illegal dumping sites.

Sewerage

- erecting security fencing around sewerage plant.
- Upgrading of sewerage pipeline.

3.1.4. Streets, kerbing and pavements:

Challenges:

- Potholes in gravel roads
- Existing tar roads in bad condition
- Not all areas have pavements along the roads.
- Existing pavements and kerbs are in bad condition.
- No road signs in some areas.
- Roads that are the responsibility of the Eden District Municipality are also in bad condition.

Key Priorities:

- All existing gravel road must be tar roads or paved roads by 2010/2014
- Upgrade all unpaved roads to paved roads.
- Regular routine maintenance by the Eden District Municipality.
- Regular maintenance of Municipal streets.
- To extend the existing tar road from the N2 via Slangrivier to Witsand.
- Upgrading of kerbs and pavements.

3.1.5. Traffic, roads and transport:

Challenges:





- Traffic officers are not visible enough in some areas.
- No public transport between Slangrivier, Heidelberg and Riversdal.
- Unlicensed vehicles and drivers on the roads.

Key Priorities:

- Traffic officers should be more visible in areas.
- Speed bumps in streets of residential areas.
- Speed bumps in a high speed traffic zone.
- Put up visible traffic signs where needed.
- Urge Provincial Authorities for the provision of an efficient public transport infrastructure.

3.1.6. Storm water drainage

Challenges:

- Storm water drainage is a huge problem especially in Slangrivier and Joe-Slovo during heavy rainfall.

Key Priorities:

- Urgent upgrading is needed.
- A storm water management plan should be in place.
- Regular maintenance of storm water related infrastructure.
- Installation of storm water pipes in areas such as Slangrivier en Joe-Slovo.

3.2. Housing:

Challenges:

- The current housing need in Slangrivier is 573 units
- Illegal erecting of informal settlements.
- Existing RDP-houses are in a bad condition.
- Un-tenanted RDP houses in Slangrivier and un-built houses in Joe-Slovo

Key Priorities:

- Provide bulk infrastructure services for housing projects.
- Build 573-600 new units in Slangrivier.
- Find a solution to deal with the owners of un-tenanted houses in Slangrivier.
- Implement a plan to finish the building of houses in Joe-Slovo.
- Build municipal houses for rental hire.

3.3. Local Economic Development:

Challenges:



- Lack of Skills development and basic training entrepreneurs.
- Lack of sufficient infrastructure.
- Accommodation.
- Poverty
- Illiteracy.

Key Priorities:

- Create accommodation for Entrepreneurs to promote their products.
- Training of SMME's in skills development such as Arts and Crafts.
- Tourism Development: The development of existing recreational facilities near the N2 route, for the development of a Tourism office and a One-stop business centre for local entrepreneurs.
- Availability of business premises, to create more job opportunities.
- Support small-scale farmers.
- Develop municipal chalets in Witsand.
- Develop a whale hiking route between Witsand and Puntjie.
- Upgrading of existing tourism offices.
- Creation of sustainable jobs.

3.4. Social and Welfare development

Challenges:

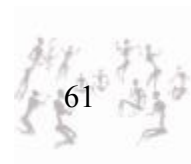
- There are no youth facilities in Ward 4.
- The Sport facilities are not up to standard.
- Illegal liquor stores in areas (shebeens)
- Drug and Alcohol abuse
- No support or protection of vulnerable groups.
- Stigma of HIV/Aids and .T.B.
- School drop outs, because of poverty in household.
- Teenage pregnancies.

Key Priorities:

- Upgrade the Sport facilities
- Erect a name board on the Slangrivier Sport grounds
- A pavilion on the sport grounds.
- Create more space for day camping in Witsand.
- A Municipal swimming pool in Slangrivier.
- Create suitable recreation and youth facilities.
- Community Programmes: HIV/Aids awareness Programmes.
(Also in the rural areas)
- A House of Safety for abused vulnerable groups, where support Programmes will be in place.
- Eradicate all Illegal liquor houses.

3.5. Environmental development:

Challenges:





- Lack of interest in the environmental development.
- Lack of interesting facilities.

Key Priorities:

- Develop some open spaces in the ward into recreation facilities (picnic parks or “braai spots”)
- Develop nature parks.
- Planting of trees along the roads.
- Create an environmental project :e.g.“Operation green fingers” where residents can grow there own gardens.
- Eradicate all alien plants.
- Provide boat trips.
- Create botanical gardens.
- Regular cleaning campaigns.

5.3.5. Ward 5 – Clr A Hartnick

1. VISION

That Heidelberg should be a paradise for everyone living in it, visiting and also those planning to come and stay here.

2. LOCATION

It is situated between Riversdale and Slangriver on the N2 in the Western Cape in South Africa.



Profile of Ward 5

- 2006 IDP document stats
 - 5285 People
 - 1285 Housing Units
 - 13,70% of the Hessequa region 24,52 km wards capacity and 215,54 individuals per km.
- Gender: 46,99% Men 53,01% Females
- Race: 8,6 – Black, 69,76% -Coloured, 20,86% - White
- Language: Afrikaans 91,1% , XHOSA 4,69%, English: 2,78%
- ± 25% Youth (15–35) ± 15% Older than 60 years
- ± 57,43% Born in Heidelberg
- Since 2001 ± 15% people moved to Heidelberg.
- Teaching facilities: 2 High Shools, 2 Primary Schools, 3 Crèches
- Clinic
- Libraries
- Churches 8
- CPF
- Badisa
- Child Welfare
- Trauma Room





- VLV
- House Zenobia du Toit (Senior Citizens)
- Sportsbody

Sports practiced in our region

- Rugby Club
- Cricket
- Tennis
- Golf
- Bowls
- Badminton
- Karate
- Christmas Choir
- Drama Groups
- "Langarmorkes"

Economic Drivers

- SSK - Southern Cape Co-Op
- SAPD
- Teachers
- "Meadow Fresh"
- Municipality
- Eden Municipality
- Ambulance
- Overberg Water Works
- Cape Bento Nite
- Work for Water
- Construction
- Citrus Farms

Challenges:

1. Water

- The only problem with the water in Heidelberg is the establishment of a new housing project in the near future.
- The situation with the Overberg Water Works is also causing uncertainty.

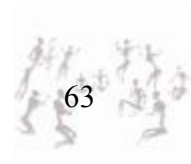
Priorities:

- Busy with a master plan for water in this region.
- Getting pre-paid water meters for the people.

2. Electricity

The street lights need to be upgraded along the N2 and in the residential area.

Priorities





Upgrade of the streetlights next to the N2 and in the residential areas.

3. Sanitation and Refuse Removal

- Complete sewerage project.
- Dumping site is in a terrible state (health risk)
- Un-authorized dumping
- Eradicate the bucket system totally.
- Building of toilets for elderly people as well as single women.
- Dumping on sidewalks.

Priorities

- To look at the dumping site: this holds a health risk.
- Toilets for the elderly and single women.
- The moving of the sewerage.

4. Streets

- The terrible conditions of the roads.
- The lack of kerbing in some areas.

Priorities

- The paving of all streets.

5. Traffic

- There is no law enforcement in Heidelberg.
- People walking over the N2, even with a bridge in place for them to safely cross the road.
- Begging and loitering after pay – end of the month at the market.
- Bus-stop is used for public drinking.

Priorities

- To improve on law enforcement immediately.

6. Storm Water Drainage

- Busy with a master plan.

7. Human Settlements

- Waiting list of over 1000.
- Backyard dwellers.
- Two informal settlements





Priorities

- To build 1000 housing units.
- Also middle income class housing.
- Un-finished houses in Joe Slovo.
- Developing of the Kairos property.

8. Local Economic Development

- Sustainable job creation.
- R20 000 projects – Wood-making and distribution
- Catering
- Homestays
- Craft projects
- Cultural projects
- Sporting projects

Priorities

- Cultural projects
- Sporting projects
- Sustainable job creation

9. Social and Welfare Development

- No recreational facilities for the youth or the senior citizens.
- Sporting facilities need to be upgraded.
- Already busy with HIV / AIDS/ TB projects.

Priorities

- Improve the sport facilities.
- Building of a multi purpose centre.

Implementation:

- Obtain land for housing
- Youth development in form of empowered projects
- Recycle Projects
- More Opportunities for Tourism
- A Multi Purpose Centre
- An Active Ward Committee which contributes to democracy
- Drug free Community

Good Governance

- Good communication
- Effective and an active Ward committee
- Better Community participation



We are proud of our Ward

- Our beautiful historical buildings.
- Our clean environment.
- Our achievements on various grounds, sport, academically and cultural.

5.3.6.Ward 6 – Clr Hartnick

1. VISION

To push back the frontiers of poverty, a caring community marked by equity, empowerment and social cohesion.



2. Background:

Ward 6 is based in the Hessequa Municipality, which includes rural areas, In ward 6 we are committed together with the Municipality to find ways to meet the needs of our community, and for an intergraded sustainable 20 year strategy.

2.1 Demographics

- Population count: ?
- Household: ?

2.2 Socio-economic statistics

- Gender :

Male :	45,87%
Female:	54, 13%
- Language:

Afrikaans:	97,15%
English:	1, 96%
Isixhoza:	0, 79%
Tshivenda:	0, 10%
- Employment Status:

Paid employees:	44, 55%
Self-employed:	1, 35%
Unemployed:	49, 26%

3. FOCUS AREAS: CHALLENGES AND KEY PRIORITIES

3.1. BASIC INFRASTRUCTURE:

3.1.1 Water

Challenges

Water backlogs in the rural areas.

Key Priorities

- The elimination of all water backlogs-especially on farms.





- Updating the master plan as well as the water services development plan on regular basis.
- The maintenance of all water related infrastructure.

3.1.2 Electricity

Challenges

- Dark corners and streets

Key Priorities

- The upgrading of existing street lights, put in brighter lights
- The extension of the existing networks

3.1.3 Sanitation and Refuse Removal

Challenges

- Illegal dumping sites in communities
- No flush toilet in rural areas

Key Priorities

- Investigate illegal sites
- Run cleaning campaigns which can be initiated by the communities

3.1.4 Streets, kerbing and paving

Challenges

- Paving of roads
- Potholes in streets.
- Kerbing in the progress estate residential area.

Key Priorities

- All gravel roads in the community must get paving within the next 5 years.
- Finalize and implement the master plan for streets, kerbing and pavements.

3.1.5 Storm Water Drainage

Challenges

- Management of the storm water drainage

Key Priorities

- Upgrading of the storm water drainage
- Regular maintenance of the storm water drainage

3.1.6 Transport





Challenges

- No transport for the rural area /long distance

Key Priorities

- Negotiate with provincial departments to subsidise transport.
- The development of taxi stops in rural areas.

4. Housing:

Challenges

- Subsidies for quality housing
- Eradicate the housing backlog

Key Priorities

- Development of low cost housing
- By meeting the challenges in promoting human rights and meeting needs, addressing the backlogs and problems caused by apartheid planning and planning for a sustainable future, we can meet these challenges by working together with local citizens, communities and businesses, by adopting a developmental approach.
- Provide intergraded housing, which is gender, disabled friendly.
- To eradicate informal housing and to build housing in the form of flats.

5. Local Economic Development (LED):

Challenges

- Lack of skills development Programmes / opportunities
- Poor tourism sector / industry
- To promote better skills and expand access to economical opportunities.
- Sustainable job creation opportunities.
- Lack of interest in entrepreneurship

Key Priorities

- Local Government can play an important role in promoting job creation.
- Providing good quality, cost effective services, by making the local area a pleasant place to live in.
- The expanding of the EPWP Programme-aimed at reducing poverty while simultaneously providing work experience and skills.
- The development and up-lifting of community facilities, especially in the rural areas, where skills development Programmes will be initiated.
- Programmes that could initiate to alleviate poverty and enhance job creation for example, the provision of support services, such as training to small businesses and CBO'S.
- Upgrading of the Golf Course and the development of low cost housing and flats in the area. In that way job creation will increase.





- A real growth in tourism for our community in order to help boost the economy.
- Promote growth in the second economy.
- The paving of streets- EPWP
- The development of recreational centres and sport fields in the rural area.
- The upgrading of the DeMist swimming pool into a recreational facility.

6. Social and Welfare Development

Challenges

- Teenage pregnancy
- Substance abuse
- Poverty / unemployment
- HIV / AIDS
- Drug abuse amongst youth
- Old age housing:
- Service delivery, transport
- Hospital services
- Disability: access to public buildings
- Job description opportunities
- Friendly housing / Safety & Security
- Woman & Children Abuse
- Moral regeneration/value; ethics
- Early school drop outs
- Lack of family values
- Family abuse
- Intergraded youth development
- Insufficient recreational facilities for youth

Key Priorities

- Reducing poverty in the ward, farms included.
- Community safety Programmes i.e. crime, child and woman abuse.
- To help capacitate our community based organisations and ward committees.
- To involve our youth in the cleaning of our communities.
- To inspire a spirit of volunteerism in our communities.
- Create an environment that is conducive to nurturing the potential and addressing the needs of our communities i.e. the youth
- Create sustainable recreational centres /facilities for youth.
- The provision of support services, for vulnerable groups such as disabled, women, children, people living with HIV/AIDS and people with special needs and or community development organisations.
- The development or upbringing of a day care centre for woman & children, which includes training, education etc.
- Safe house for the Street children, and other people with special needs
- Upgrading of the existing recreational facilities i.e. sports fields.
- Sustainable HIV/AIDS awareness Programmes.





7. ENVIRONMENT

CHALLENGES

- The slow pace of land reform
- Poor conditions of recreational parks.

KEY PRIORITIES

- The acceleration of land reform.
- The upgrading and maintenance of existing parks
- The development or up-lifting of other recreational parks.
- Create an environment that is conducive to nurturing the potential and addressing the needs of our communities i.e. the youth

5.3.7.Ward 7 – Clr Streicher

Hessequa Municipality

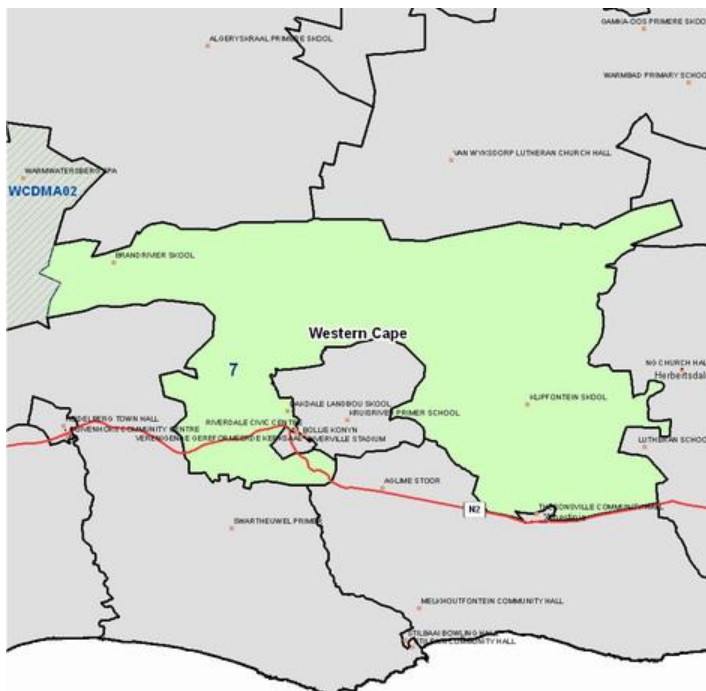
Ward based IDP for WARD 7

1. VISION

An integrated community that is happy with and proud of their environment and an empowered rural people with municipal services closer to them.



2. BACKGROUND



Ward 7 is the biggest ward geographically in the Hessequa Municipality. It consists of a modern town area in which the headquarters of the municipality lies, as well as a huge rural area. Although integration exists, it develops slowly and this part of the town is still mostly populated by the previously advantaged. The rate of unemployment and education is average because a huge number of people who stay in ward 7 are retired from work and vast amounts of the youth in our area leaving the area to study and searching for work in bigger cities of South Africa and even over seas.

Important connecting Roads run through Ward 7. The N2 and the road between Riversdale and Ladysmith, the gravel



road between Van Wyksdorp and Herbertsdale and partly gravel and partly black top road between Albertinia and Herbertsdale. 90% of the roads in Ward are gravel which are maintained by Eden District Municipality through funds from the Provincial Government.

3. FACILITIES

- Crèches 5
- Primary Schools 6
- High Schools 2
- Clinics 1
- Hospitals 1
- Sports ground 5
- Community Halls 5
- Multi Purpose Community Centres 0
- Swimming pools 1
- Disability home 1

4. PROFILE

1. Location

It consists of a part of the town Riversdale from Alwyn Fleur and Heidelberg in the North onwards to the South between the N2, in the West, and Van den Berg Street in the east, towards Varkevisser in the South. It also includes the rural area of Kweekkraal, Vetterivier, Garcia and Oakdale north of Riversdale till it reach the Langeberg mountain. On the other side of the mountain it also includes the rural area of Brandrivier, Miertjieskraal and Langkloof. The later area connects over the mountain back south with the northern rural area of Albertinia, starting between Lanquedoc and Die Poort in the North [next to the mountains] and Snymankraal and Bonavontuur in the South, north of the N2 National Road.

2. Towns and residential area:

- a. Riversdale
- b. Denedal – Garcia
- c. Farm units

3. Demographics (2001 Census)

a. Age structure

0-4	5-9	10-14	15-19	20-24	25-29	30-34	35-39	40-44	45-49	50-54	55-59	60-64	65-69	70+
8.44%	6.75%	7.35%	9.33%	7.05%	5.56%	3.77%	6.75%	6.06%	7.35%	7.65%	4.37%	4.57%	4.57%	8.54%

b. Educational level

None	Pre-school	Primary school	Secondary school	Tertiary institution	Adult education
41.14%	4.75%	29.75%	22.47%	0.32%	0.00%

c. Unemployment Status



Paid employee	Self-employed	Employer	Unemployed	N/A
46.12%	4.08%	0.27%	44.90%	4.63%

d. Sector Analysis

Formal sector	Informal sector	Work for private person	N/A
46.79%	49.10%	3.08%	1.03%

e. Monthly household income

No income	R1-R400	R401-R800	R801-R1 600	R1 601-R3 200	R3 201-R6 400	R6 401-R12 800	R12 801-R25 600	R25 600+
1.25%	1.88%	8.13%	19.69%	13.44%	9.06%	8.13%	1.25%	1.56%

f. Source of household income:

Wage/salaries from employment	Remittances from people living elsewhere	State pension & grants	Selling livestock/products	Own businesses earning (selling/service)	Food & money from relatives in area	Cultivation for food	Cultivation for income	Private pension/interest	Private maintenance	Investments	Other
63.13%	1.88%	10.31%	2.19%	1.88%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	18.44%	0.63%	0.31%	1.25%

g. Dependence on grants

Old age	Veteran's pension	Disability	Grant in aid	Care dependency	Unemployment insurance	Child support	Foster child	No grant
4.87%	0.00%	2.18%	1.09%	0.60%	1.19%	5.36%	0.00%	84.71%

h. Economic drivers

- a. Agriculture
- b. Retail Trade
- c. Catering and accommodation
- d. Construction
- e. Transport, storage and communication
- f. Finance, insurance, real estate and business services.

5 FOCUS AREA

1. Basic infrastructure





a. Water

Challenges

- New water sources for Riversdale as well as rural area.
- Present capacity are already over the limit
- An envisaged new residential development poses a big threat
- Master plan for sustained provision is lacking
- Finalize and implement a master plan for the provision of water and related infrastructure
- Improve the quality of the water of Denedal - Garcia through better infrastructure and enhanced treatment processes to adhere to SABS standards
- Improve the quality of water of all rural residents through better infrastructure and better sources

Key priorities

- New water sources for Riversdale as well as rural area
- Renewed attempt for the Wydersrivier dam
- Upgrading of drinking water in Garcia and all farm worker's houses, starting negotiating with farmer of Vetterivier

b. Electricity

Challenges

- Master plan for provision in rural area is lacking

Key priorities

- Finalize and implement a master plan for sustainable electricity supply
- Organize a Rural workshop with Ward councillors, Councillors of Eden, heads of departments of both Municipalities, as well as stakeholders such as Eskom and Department of Water affairs to plan among others a master plan for electricity provision for the rural area.

c. Sanitation and refuse removal

Challenges

- Affordable plan for the rural area in relation to refuse removal
- Safe toilets for all farm workers preferably in their houses
- Dumping of building rubble in open areas as well as in Uitwijk dam
- Dumping of garden refuse in unoccupied erven.
- Dumping of garden refuse in the Oakdale servitude road.

Key priorities

- Organize a Rural workshop with Ward councillors, Councillors of Eden, heads of departments of both Municipalities, as well as stakeholders such as Eskom and department of Water affairs to plan among others a master plan for refuse removal for the rural area.
- Albertinia must be capable of receiving refuse from farms.

d. Streets, kerbing and pavements



Challenges

- Potholes in many streets
- Dangerous manhole at corner of Protea en Freesia Street
- Trees on the divide at Heidelbergweg next to the Post Office make it impossible for pedestrians to walk on
- Many streets needs a new top surface.
- The approach at the N2 from Cape Town needs to be beautified

Key priorities

- Finalize and implement master plan for streets, kerbing and pavements
- Repair dangerous manhole
- Ward 7 does not gain much in the budget of 2007/2008,
- therefore it is just fair that it is at least kept clean and beautiful.
- Ward 7 understands that more money must be spent in other wards where there are stronger needs, but it is just fair to ask that its roads must be thoroughly maintained.

e. Traffic, roads and transport

Challenges

- Heidelbergweg an Ladysmithweg as a provincial road is a display of our governance for visitors that pass through
- Heavy transport on above named streets
- Curtail drivers exceeding speed limits
- Trees and shrubs growing in and over pavements, forcing pedestrians walking in the streets and blocking the view of the traffic
- No public transport for rural workers and their families
- Poor conditions of gravel roads.

Key priorities

- Empower Aesthetical Committee to draw a Master plan for Heidelberg and Ladysimthweg.
- Consider alternative route for heavy vehicles
- Implement speed calming where necessary
- Inspect all approaches, T-Junctions and corners and remove any obstruction of the view for traffic
- Urge [pressurize] Authorities to implement a public transport plan for the poor people in the rural area. Consideration of the possibility for subsidized transport.
- Organize a Rural workshop with Ward councillors, Councillors of Eden, heads of departments of both Municipalities, as well as stakeholders such as Eskom and department of Water affairs to plan among others a master plan for the roads in the rural area.

2. f. Storm water drainage

Challenges

- Drainage problems Fynbospark area
- Drainage problems corner of Albertyn and Osler street





- Drainage problems Barne street next of Sawmill
- Drainage problems in Simon and Pauw street due to Gum tree waste.
- **Key priorities**
- Finalize and implement master plan for storm water and drainage
- Cut the alien gum trees in N2 shoulder next to Simon on Pauw Street. The neighbouring home owners requested this as it blocked their gullies, soiled their gardens and blocked their roofs.

2. Human settlements

Challenges

- Heavy burden on farm owners to provide housing for their workers while strict laws allow retired farm workers to stay in the houses they already build for that purpose.
- Farm evictions occur and there are no emergency housing plan in place for the victims
- Lack of sufficient infrastructure for the nurture of indigent senior citizens in general.

Key priorities

- Finalize and implement master plan for housing for retired or dismissed farm workers
- Awareness Programmes to educate farm workers as well as farm owners on the rights of farm workers
- Facilitate good relationship among farm workers and farm owners
- Create infrastructure in collaboration with the private sector for nurturing indigent senior citizens, for example retirement accommodation, medical, sport, other recreational and transport facilities.

3. Local economic development

Challenges

- Alleviation of poverty
- Sustainable job creation
- Promotion of BEE
- Provision of strategic direction and leadership to prospective entrepreneurs
- The small farmers do not perform as well as they are supposed to
- The small farmers do not participate in the initiatives of the Hessequa Agricultural Advisory Council. They are ready to help the small farmers

Key priorities

- Grow first [formal] economy by means of training, coaching and mentorship
- Support second [informal] economy by means of training, coaching and mentorship
- Promote and enhance value adding to primary products [commodities]





- Support Programmes for agriculture on farms for farm owners and farm workers
- To engage the Dept. of Agriculture in creating training opportunities for all farm workers. It will also give sustainability in farming
- To identify leaders in the Small farmer community and train them as extension officers to lead by example
- The municipality official responsible for community development must initiate the formalizing, introducing, development and support of the small farmers and the joining of them with the Hessequa Agriculture advisory committee
- Provide extension incentives to existing business
- Provide incentives to attract and locate new business
- Formulate and implement strategies to exploit, promote, market and reap benefits of vast tourist potential
- Support Business forums
- Determine 2011 soccer event potential and plan accordingly
- Empower the previously disadvantaged people in business sector and tourism so that an environment can be created so that they also benefit from these sectors
- Investigate Agricultural opportunities for farm workers
- Negotiate with farm owners for vegetable gardens for women
- Upgrading of some of the houses of Garcia for Bed and Breakfast for tourists
- Training of candidates from Garcia to be tourist guides to the caves and walking routes

4. Social and welfare development

Challenges

- Insufficient suitable recreation facilities for youth
- Insufficient sport facilities in the rural area
- HIV/AIDS/TB
- Community Safety and crime
- Drugs and alcohol abuse
- Shortage of retirement accommodation
- Poor cell phone reception in the rural area make especially farm workers who don't have landlines but cell phones, vulnerable at times of medical emergencies

Key priorities

- Create suitable recreation facilities for youth
- Initiates sporting facilities on farms and upgrade existing ones
- Youth development and curtailment of drug abuse
- To engage the Dept of Education together with Oakdale and Langenhoven High schools to create job skills and job opportunities for young people who live in the area, for example tourist guides.
- Incentives to keep our youth in our area
- The planned Technical College in the old Gerrit du Plessis hostel





- Create or convert existing buildings into multipurpose community centers for example in Garcia and the surroundings of Muiskraal and Oakdale/Vetterivier.
- Upgrade and extend existing camping sites, picnic areas and parks as well as the erection of additional ablution
- Develop a Master plan for the senior citizens , for example retirement accommodation , medical, sport, other recreational and transport facilities.
- Combat HIV/AIDS/TB
- Negotiate with cell phone companies for broader reception area
- Community safety Programmes for youth, women abuse, substance abuse and crime

6 Environmental development

Challenges

- Conserve, preserve, nurture and promote our natural and cultural heritage

Key priorities

- Conserve nature in general by working hand in hand with our Nature conservation officer Mr. Hisemann
- Conserve and control nature by working hand in hand with our environmental officer Mr Gibbs Hallis
- Assists Mr. Gibbs Hallis in establishing an well controlled problem animal management organization in the rural area
- Assist Mr. Gibbs Hallis in controlling animals in the town.
- Assists Mr. Gibbs Hallis in establishing a Fire Protection association
- Provide new and extend existing hiking routes and trails
- Formulate master plan to curtail developments along coast line and rivers
- Formulate master plan to curtail developments on agricultural land
- Formulate and engage a noise and disturbance policy and Programme.

7. Good governance

Challenges and Keypriorities

- Effective community through good communication to the people by Imbizo's, News letters, workshops, Ward meetings and media
- Establishment of a better represented Ward committee from all community based organizations and areas.
- To establish effective Ward based Youth unit which will be represented in all areas and groups especially the white youth
- Capacity building Programmes for new and young leaders
- Better response resulting the communication and needs of the people
- Upgrading Garcia to a municipal community area where services will be rendered to the people





- To upgrade and develop an atmosphere where municipal services get closer to people living in the rural area
- Organize a rural workshop with Ward councillors, Councillors of Eden, heads of departments of both Municipalities, as well as stake holders such as Eskom and department of Water affairs to plan a master plan for the rural area in general

5.3.8. WARD 8 – Cllr Taute

- Introduction
- Background and situation of Ward 8
- Development priorities of community
- Challenges
- Siya Phambili



1. BACKGROUND AND POSITION OF WARD 8

- The smallest ward in Hessequa.
- Consists of 6 residential areas -: Aloeridge, Mōrestond, Panorama, Beverley Hills, Melrose Place en Kwanokathula.
- The unemployment figure is the highest in Hessequa Municipal area with regard to women and the youth.
- Most of the households are dependent on social grants.
- The ward is rich in Aloe and other unique indigenous plants

2. VISION

To create more jobs for the unemployed people in the Ward. To empower and train youth and women. To create sustainable projects and to see that they take ownership of the projects and the projects must be sustainable for at the next five years and more.

3. CHALLENGES





200 % growth in ward

4. KEY PRIORITIES

- The community has a low literacy level and needs further skills and training for better job opportunity.
- Sustainable development must be improved for the high unemployment, to be decreased and the community to grow to the second economy.
- Sustainable development for more job creation.
- To train and develop women and youth.

5. STATISTICS

- Population Groups

Coloured	89,87%
Black	9,12%
White	0,91%
Other	0,10%

- Language

Afrikaans	91,39%
Xhosa	7,40%
English	0,10%
IsiZulu	0,10%
Sepedi	0,10%
Sesotho	0,61%
Itsonga	0,10%

- Literacy

No schooling	36,34%
Pre-school	5,19%
Primary School	39,89%
Secondary School	17,49%
Tertiary Training	0,27%

- Highest school qualification (persons older than 18 years)

Grade 0	0,64%
Grade 1 – 7	42,24%
Grade 8 – 11	33,44%
Grade 12	12,48%
Technikon Training	0,16%
University Training	0,16%

- Work status

Paid work	31,10%
Entrepreneurs	0,60%
Unemployment	65,92%

Different employers

Work for Formal sector	57,08%
------------------------	--------





Temporary workers	38,81%
Private work	4,11%
- Facilities	
Primary Schools	1
High Schools	1
Crèche	2
Clinics	0
Sport grounds	1 (Soccer field in Kwanokathula)
Community halls	1 (informal structure in Kwanokathula)

6. INFRASTRUCTURE

With the proposed development and growth of 200% in the next 5 years in the Ward, as well as the communities developing priority stakes Ward 8 needs:

6.1. Housing

Formal Housing

1330 Formal houses are in ward 8

Aloeridge –	334
Môrestond –	372
Panorama –	387
Kwanokathula –	185
Beverly Hills –	52

Informal housing

Melrose Place has 18 informal structures

Kwanokuthula has 42 informal structures

Challenges

- Poverty
- HIV / AIDS
- Low literary level

Key Priorities

- A hostel for elderly must be established in the ward.
- To build more houses to rent or to buy.
- Building of a safe house for abused children and women.
- Building of an old age home for the elderly people.
- Development of a mixed integrated residential area.
- Developing of new plots for housing at the other side of Them bani Street.

• 6.2. Roads

Challenges

- To build labour intensive roads through EPWP (paving).
- The existing tarred streets in the Ward are in following residential areas i.e.
- Aloeridge, Môrestond.
- Repair work to these tarred streets must get attention.





- The new Panorama Extension and Kwanokuthula have gravel roads.

The new Panorama Extension has 15 gravel roads - AK Daries, Patrick Witbooi, Freddie Hartnick, Jacobus Fielies, Jacob Kamfer, Brian Weber, Johan Fielies, Hendrik Fielies, Joan Reid, Lanval Reed, Jessamy Reed, Daniel Cronje, Douglas Joseph, Herbert Groenewald and Martin Martunzi.

In Kwanokuthula there are 8 gravel roads - Thembani, Rosebud, Dahlia, Mfelini, Barachuda, Marsh, Katjiefiering and Nobuhle

Key Priorities

- Paving will create jobs for the people of ward 8.
- Improvement of roads (tarred or paving), side walks (pave) and entrances (made out of vetklippe) – throughout the whole area of this Ward.

6.3. Water

Enlargement of Riversdale's water purification work.

Challenges

- Sustainable wind- and sun energy
 - Sustainable rain water to be used
- **Key Priorities**
 - Water tanks for each household - for gardening, washing of clothing, etc, but not for drinking and cooking.
 - Finalize and implement master plan for provision of water.

6.4. Sanitation

Extension of Riversdale sewerage purification plan for Ward 8.

Key Priorities

- Master plan for sewerage
- Planning for extra workload regarding the waste removal
- Urgent upgrading of sewerage system in Panorama

6.5. Storm Water Drainage

Challenges

Installing of drains in the new Panorama and Kwanokuthula areas.

Key Priorities

- Finalize and implement master plan for storm water and drainage.
- Find sustainable solution for storm water and drainage problems in the New Panorama and Kwanokuthula.





- Urgent upgrading of storm water system (especially Thembani, Rosebud and Dahlia Streets).

6.6. Electricity

Challenges

- Extension of the electricity to carry the greater demand.

Key Priorities

- Upgrade of extension networks.
- Upgrade the low voltage line guards.
- Replace existing street lights.

6.7. Local Economic Development

Challenges

- Poverty alleviation
- Sustainable job creation
- Implementation of the BEE

Key Priorities

- Availability of long term renting of agricultural land in order to obtain a government subsidy for Kwanokuthula Small Farmers.
- Reconstruction of various roads in terms of pavement management
- Resealing of various roads in terms of pavement management systems.
- Paving of gravel roads – labour intensive - EPWP.
- Complete storm water master plan in order to prioritise storm water needs in Hessequa.
- Construction and upgrading of ad-hoc storm water systems.
- The construction of kerb laying at existing tar roads.
- Development of parks and recreation facilities.
- Upgrading of parking areas – EPWP.
- Construction of parking area – one stop traffic in centre.
- Upgrading of side walks – EPWP.
- Upgrading the low voltage line guards.
- Upgrading existing distribution network.
- Replacing existing street lights.
- New water reservoir to increase water storage capacity.
- Upgrading of water infrastructure
- Spare water pump.
- Upgrading of water supply.
- Installing sewerage bulk infrastructure





Economic Activities

- General dealers in residential areas – Aloeridge Cash Store, Panorama Cash Store and ± 16 Spaza shops.
- Legal liquor dealers in residential areas - Panorama Off sales, Stephas Inn and Karin's Place
- Illegal liquor dealers in residential areas
- Ha!Qua Youth Programme
- N2 – Bali Trading, Wimpy, Engen, Toyota
- Industrial area
- Unattractive industrial area
- Tapping of aloes

6.9. Social Development

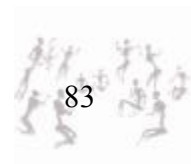
Challenges

Socio – Uplifting - Rehabilitation Centre/ Programme

- A Rehabilitation centre/Programme must be created.
- Most of the people are dependant on the Department Of Social Services and misuse their All Pay grant.
- The people should be educated how to budget their monthly income.
- There should be Programmes to help Alcohol and Drug addicts.
- To assist HIV/AIDS victims –
- Establish Programmes to educated HIV/AIDS victims.
- Volunteers must get further training to help the people living with these diseases.
- Senior citizens should be assisted and secured.
- To build an old age home for the elderly people of Ward 8.
- To put sustainable projects in place for the unemployed youth and women..
- There are two early childhood development schools in the Ward called Bollie Konyn and Lukhanyo. Both these schools (ECD) need to be upgraded.

6.10. Environment

- The sustainability committed and support of the Werner Frehse and Aloeridge Bewarea.
- The ward is rich in Aloe and other unique indigenous plants.
- The present recreational park situated between Aloeridge and Mōrestond needs repair work.
- The fence is broken as well as the play apparatus.
- There should be toilets as well as recreation facilities for adults who accompany their children.
- Job creation opportunity for one person to supervise and to keep the park in a clean condition.
- Panorama and Kwanokuthula have no existing recreational parks for children.





Challenges

- Sustainable wind and sun energy
- Job creation opportunity for one person to supervise and to keep the park in a clean condition.

Key Priorities

- Recreational facilities in Kwanokuthula for youth ie. recreational park
- Erecting of a recreational park in Kwanokuthula.
- Upgrading of Airfield.
- Building of "Speelman Bali" Community Centre in Kwanokuthula. It can be used as offices, library, clinic, youth facility etc.
- Developing of the 'Wilson Qubengu" Community Park.
- Developing of a nature college and pilot college with the necessary living units for students.





CHAPTER 6: SECTOR ANALYSIS

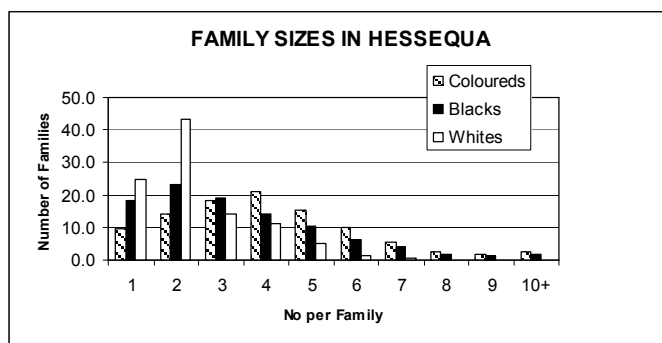
6.1.ECONOMY

6.1.1. Demographics

Hessequa is a low-density extensive rural Afrikaans-speaking area. Three inland towns (Riversdale, Heidelberg and Albertinia) an inland village (Slangrivier), a coastal town (Stilbaai) and four coastal villages (Witsand, Gouritsmond, Jongensfontein and Melkhoutfontein) house about 70% of the population. The salient statistics from the 2001 Sensus are:

Estimated population size (2001)	44117
Coloured	30947
White	11349
Black	1781
Indian/Asian	40
Number of households	9745
Major language (> 95%)	Afrikaans
Estimated annual income per household (Rand)	28610
Area km ²	5731.1
Population density No./km ²	6.7
Average household size	4.0
Population growth rate (% per annum) 1991 – 1996	
Urban	3.0
Rural	-2.1

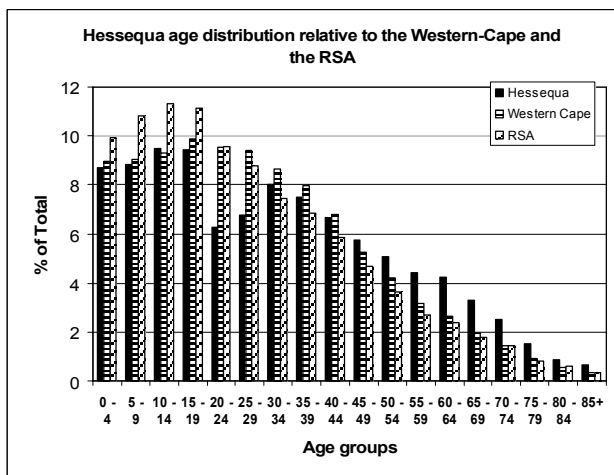
The urban population is growing whilst the rural population is declining. The immigration of elderly (pre)-retired people to coastal towns and villages and younger people from the Eastern Cape has grown the population. Rural depopulation is closely linked with agricultural dynamics (see later).



More than 60% of whites live in one or two-person households. Black households also peak at 2-person households but some can be large. Coloured households peak a four persons but some can also be very large. The dependency factor in the coloured and black households is high.

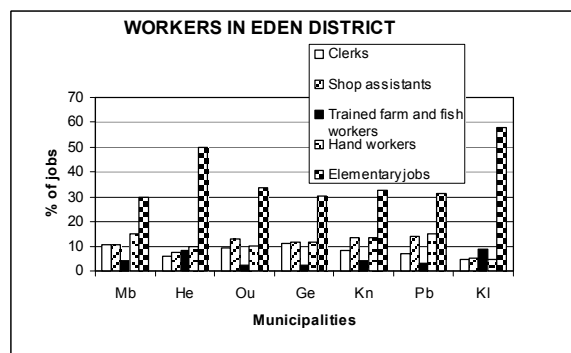


Young people leave the municipal area to seek opportunities elsewhere whilst the area is particularly rich in elderly people, partly as a result of the immigration of elderly people to the South Cape, including Hessequa. The youth gap is particularly strong in the white and coloured groups, but this is not true for Africans. Their distribution suggests a higher density of young black people, possibly because they perceive more opportunity in Hessequa than where they come from (mostly the Eastern Cape).



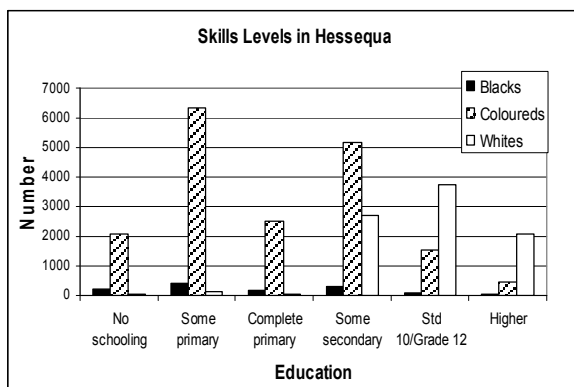
6.1.2. Education

Children (age 19 or less) constitute about 35% of Hessequa's population. A large percentage of young children do not attend pre-school facilities. This is particularly true for the black and coloured groups. About 57% of children are in school (blacks about 49%, coloureds about 55% and whites about 65%). Very few children in Hessequa are involved in post-matric studies; young people have to leave the area if they want to obtain further training/education.



6.1.3. Skills Levels

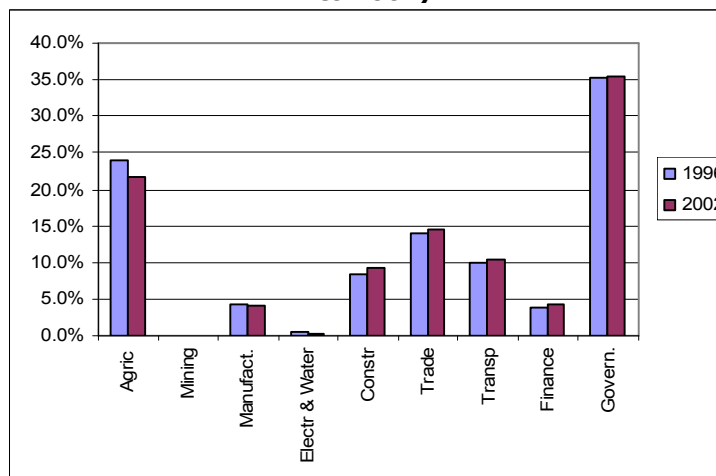
Hessequa is a rural agricultural area dominated by commodity agriculture similar to Kannaland. No wonder that elementary jobs dominate and that the highest relative percentages of trained agricultural workers are encountered in Hessequa and Kannaland. Clerks, shop assistants and hand workers are fewer.



Poor skills levels occur mainly in the black and coloured groups. Higher schooling is largely present amongst whites but is growing in the coloured group. Many elderly residents in Hessequa have degrees but most are no longer economically active. Neither the type of work available in Hessequa nor the present skills levels offer attractive bases for diversification of the local economy or migration of businesses from the Second to First Economy.



Hessequa – changes in structure of economy (1996 to 2002)

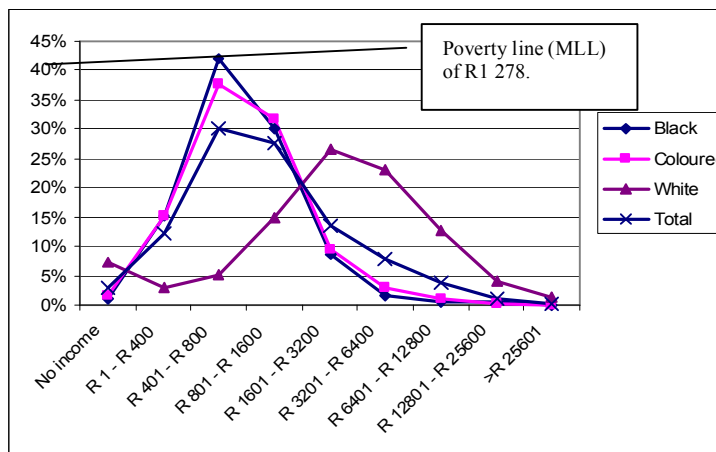


6.1.4. Poverty and inequality

Significant portions of black (~80%) and coloured (~75%) and fewer white Hessequans (~ 29%) live below the poverty line. There are pockets of extreme poverty, for example in Kwanokuthula in Riversdale and Slangrivier. Each of the inland towns has a large group of poor people, a result of past discrimination and current unequal patterns of land and business ownership and the skills gap.

The established patterns of poverty and inequality are reinforced by economic trends that impact harshly on semi-skilled and unskilled workers. This includes a decline in the fishing industry, the vagaries of droughts and floods, and the seasonal nature of agricultural, tourism and domestic work. The decline of the inland towns and the rise of the coastal towns (see later) have resulted in hundreds of workers having long daily commutes from the inland to the coastal towns and back to work.

In the disadvantaged groups, women bear the brunt of poverty, a lack of social cohesion, high levels of violence, gender inequality and alcohol abuse.



6.1.5. The local formal economy

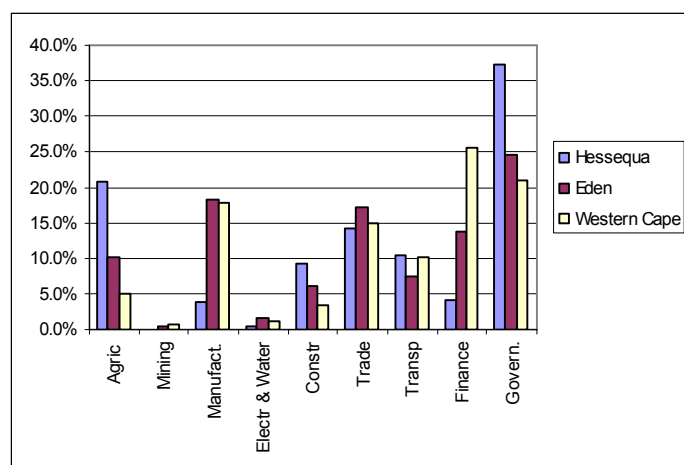
Hessequa's formal economy is 0,5% that of the western Cape whilst its population is 0,9%, suggesting that the local economy is under performing relative to that of the Western Cape.

The agriculture, construction, transport and government services sectors are areas of strength in the local economy whilst the manufacturing and financial services sectors are less important.

The agriculture and manufacturing sectors declined in importance between 1996 and 2001 whilst the construction, trade, transport and finance sectors showed some growth.

Employment increased in most sectors between 1996 and 2001. Agriculture is still a major employer in Hessequa, whilst the

The local economy in perspective





construction, trade, financial services, and government have also increased employment.

Analyses showed Hessequa enjoys a comparative advantage in three sectors, namely agriculture, construction and government. The comparative advantages relative to the Western Cape in agriculture and construction are significant.

The production of wheat and other grains in Hessequa has stabilised over the past number of years. More Canola and Sunflower are produced than earlier whilst the sheep population has also grown. Ostrich, dairy and vegetable production are down but game farming is rising (but from a very low base). Overall, the agricultural focus of Hessequa has not changed much over the last century apart from crops such as Canola being introduced.

Land ownership is almost exclusively in the hands of whites. There are a number of small PDI farmer initiatives, but these are mostly struggling because of a lack of experience, strategic planning, resources and help. The BEE targets for agriculture are daunting and a clear strategy is lacking.

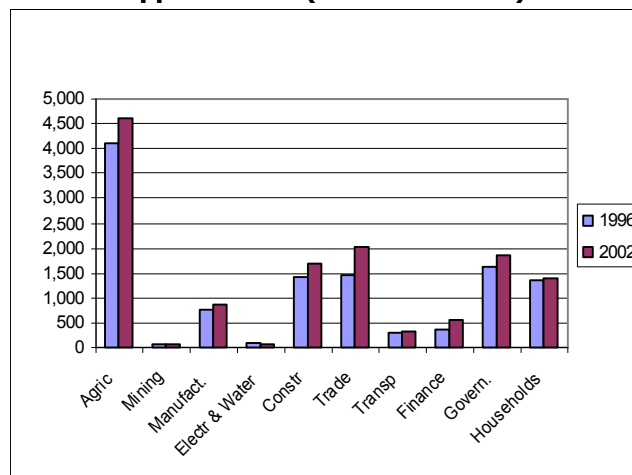
6.1.6. The local informal economy

Many people in Hessequa, especially in PDI communities, are forced to enter the informal economy to survive financially. The majority (41%) of the informal businesses are involved in trade-related enterprises (mostly spaza shops but shebeens also proliferate), followed by manufacturing (~17%). The majority (72%) of the enterprises operate from homes, mostly inside the house itself (57%), whereas 15% operate outside in the open air.

Only 20% of the owners rent the structure in which they conduct their business, with the rest own the structure. Most of these entrepreneurs do not have much choice in the location of their enterprise, as their private houses offer the best option (e.g. it is affordable). The spaza shops are part of an important mechanism to circulate money in PDI communities.

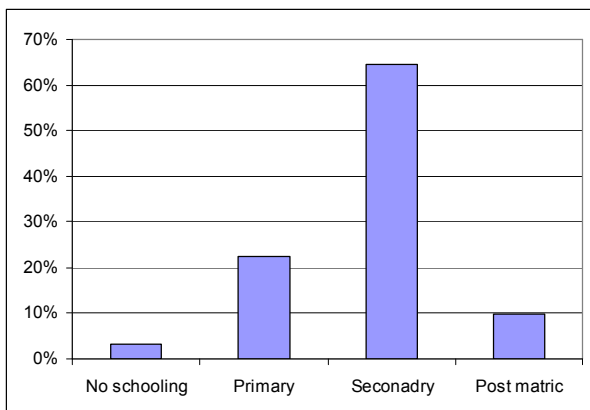
The entrepreneurs are mostly 30 years or older. It is surprising that young people do not seem to be willing to risk becoming entrepreneurs. Entrepreneurial training obviously lacks in the region.

Hessequa – Direct employment opportunities (1996 and 2002)





Education levels of informal entrepreneurs

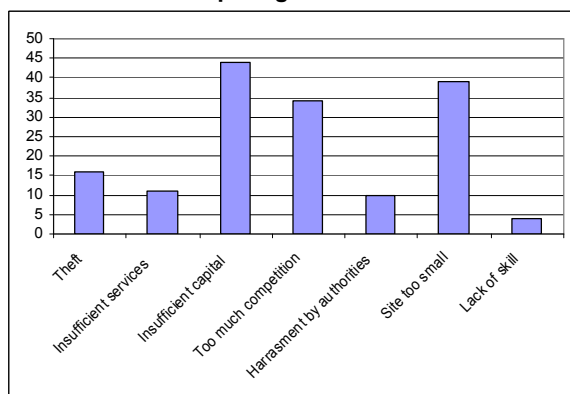


Surprisingly most entrepreneurs are relatively well schooled, having at least a secondary education. It shows that even the informal economy in Hessequa needs people with knowledge and skills.

A number of factors, particularly the lack of money, competition and small sites, are hampering informal entrepreneurs.

Hence they are in need of soft loans and facilities where they can manufacture and trade. They also need training in business skills and better equipment.

Factors hampering the informal sector



6.1.7. The factors that shaped the modern Hessequa economy

6.1.7.1 Focus on commodities

Agricultural commodities from Hessequa have traditionally mostly been (and are still being) exported to somewhere else where value addition takes place. This has introduced distortions in the local economy. It

also means that all potential benefits from the local economy are not being realised.

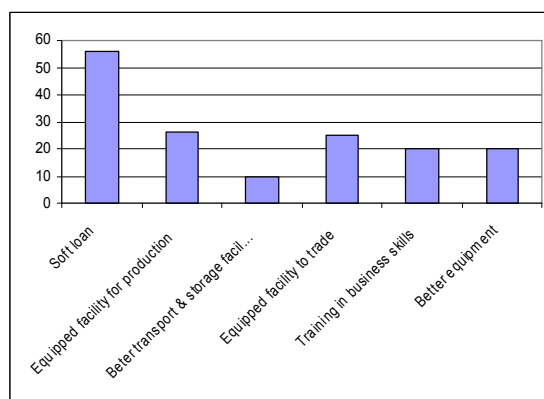
6.1.7.2 A lack of minerals

The lack of minerals in the Western Cape, including Hessequa, means that mining has never become a significant part of the local economy.

6.1.7.3 Development of towns

Two sets of needs drove the development of the region's towns. Firstly, the needs of farmers for churches, schools, supplies, markets and government services (e.g. security services) led to requests to the Dutch East India Company to establish towns. In addition, the authorities, particularly the British, were worried about the viability of the rural areas. As a consequence, towns such as Swellendam and later Riversdale and Heidelberg were founded to attract more settlers and to strengthen the region.

Support required by informal entrepreneurs



6.1.7.4 Innovation and "inkommers"

Agricultural innovation led to the establishment of first wool and later crops such as wheat and other grains as commercial products. New economic opportunities were



almost without exception introduced by newcomers to the region. The use of the Afrikaans word “inkommer” to this day has a derogatory context reflecting the inclination of the regional inhabitants to resist change. Some people see this as being “traditional” and, hence, worthwhile.

6.1.7.5 Strife, “future shock” and the “NIMBY” principle

The arrival of Khoi-Khoi herdsmen in the region led to strife between them and the San tribes. The arrival of Trekboers led to strife between them and the Khoisan and Xhosa people. The arrival of commercial farmers led to strife between them and the subsistence farmers. The arrival of new immigrants from the Eastern Cape and from Gauteng is causing strife between the original and the new residents. There is a historical trend in Hessequa of tension between the old and the new. Resistance to change creates a huge inertia that must be overcome during economic renewal.

Hessequa is also experiencing a healthy dose of Nimby (slang for “Not in my backyard”). This is taking many different forms. For instance, a substantial part of the coastline is the property of (often absent) landlords who do not allow public (or tourists) access to the sea and beaches. Conservation is often cited as the reason why access is controlled. Retired people in coastal towns often vigorously campaign against the further development of these towns.

The Nimby attitudes tend to limit the economic choices of the region. For instance, how does one promote coastal tourism if tourists cannot access the sea and beaches along sizable chunks of the coastline?

The term “Future Shock” was coined by Alvin Toffler and refers to the situation under which the prospects of a changing future literally “freeze” people into apathy or inaction. The apathy of many leaders and people in Hessequa towards involvement in the debate on tough issues such as BEE, skewed income and ownership patterns of land and businesses suggest that “future shock” is present and impeding the process of economic strategy formulation.

6.1.7.6 The impact of modern transport and communications technologies

For about 150 years agriculture and communications in the Overberg and beyond were hampered by the difficulty to reach Cape Town over poor tracks and difficult mountain passes. Lack of mobility was a huge impediment. This promoted existence farming.

The British annexation of the Cape in 1806 and strategic decisions to strengthen the hinterland resulted in new opportunities, including the rise of the Barry and Nephews commercial empire. The use of boats to move goods from Port Beaufort (Witsand) and Malgas in the mid 1800s promoted wool as an export product from the South Cape. Existence farming gave way to commercial farming and prosperity increased. Later ostrich feathers, wheat and a range of other agricultural products followed. Agricultural prosperity became the driving force in the rise and prosperity of the inland towns, and as agriculture prospered the towns prospered.

By the end of the 20th century developments were on the horizon that would weaken the link between town and agriculture. The development of a railway line that linked Worcester with George and the implementation of the telegraph added totally new dimensions. Mobility of man and produce and effective communications were hugely improved. The improved mobility and communications enhanced business and





commercial farming and forestry. Agriculture prospered and, as a consequence, the towns of the region prospered.

Railway development was followed by the improvement of the road systems of the southern Cape. This unlocked the tourism potential of the region. The southern Cape coast became a desired vacation destination and eventually a preferred retirement destination. Eventually the stranglehold on road transport of the Department of Transport was broken. This opened up road transport as a means of serving local and other markets. The N2 now carries millions of vehicles every year and traffic density is on the increase.

Increased mobility, however, had several stings in the tail. Firstly, commercial farmers supplying primary agricultural products to major markets were subject to the discipline of those markets. If a farmer could not supply produce profitably, he had to improve his productivity or face ruin. This was true a century ago and it is true today. Southern Cape commercial farmers now operate within a global market where survival depends on having world-class capabilities in order to survive in your own market place (see also the following section)

The second effect of increased mobility was that large trading companies realised that there were attractive markets in the rural areas that they could serve. This brought enormous competitive pressure to bear on the traditional and often family-owned rural traders. In most cases, these enterprises were either taken over by larger concerns or they disappeared. For instance, Spar, O K Grocer and Friendly are now ubiquitous in the region. The nature and composition of the business structure of rural towns changed drastically.

Thirdly, increased mobility empowered the consumers and farmers to be more selective in where goods are purchased. Many people will rather travel to larger regional trading centres to make their purchases than to buy locally. Although consumers and farmers benefit individually, communities suffer in the end as businesses can no longer survive and go under. Regional centres such as George have benefited from this trend but most other regional towns have suffered.

Fourthly, increased mobility also changed the way in which government departments served the nation or financial institutions served communities. Government departments often withdrew staff from rural towns such as Riversdale and centralised them in larger regional centres. By doing so, persons with a sizable and stable income were removed from the economic pool of these towns. The decline of the railways also led to the loss of people from inland towns and exacerbated the above problems. Businesses such as banks are increasingly employing computer technology to service customers. A few instead of large cohort of staff members now serve a whole community. In the end, the circulation of money in the community is curtailed.

The end result of these dynamics is that the inland towns of Hessequa have been in a process of stagnation. Little value is added to primary agricultural produce whilst the numbers of the unemployed and associated socio-economic problems are growing.

6.1.7.7 Globalization and agriculture

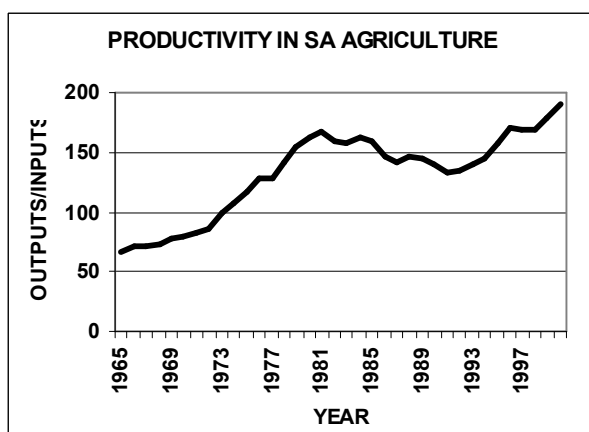
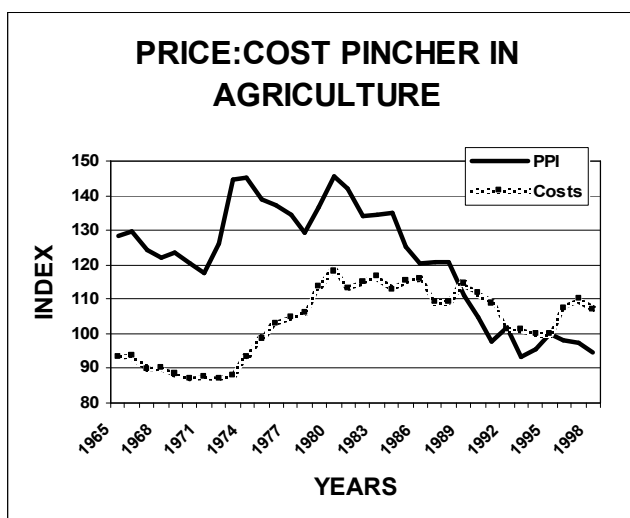




During the last three decades, the so-called “price-cost squeeze” (as a result of globalization) put unbearable pressure on the commodity farmers in South Africa, including those in Hessequa. The prices they were able to realise for their commodity products had on average declined by some 40% in real terms over this period. Their financial survival was largely sought in two directions, both with negative consequences for the regional economy.

Firstly, farmers improved their productivity. In most cases they mechanised their operations. Machines were introduced at the expense of workers. Secondly, many farmers sought economies of scale. Larger farmers bought out small farmers with a concomitant loss of labourers. In both cases, people made redundant in agriculture moved to the towns where employment opportunities were limited.

A recent report by the National Agricultural Marketing Board suggested that the above dynamics are not at an end. Some 14% of South Africa’s work force is still involved in agriculture compared to the 2 to 3% of most developed countries. The rapid progress in computer technology that enables “smart machines”, also in agriculture, is bound to exacerbate this problem in Hessequa in the future. Farmers’ fears about land rights also promote the minimisation of labour and the increased use of machines.



6.1.7.8 The rise of tourism

The coastal villages of Gouritsmond, Stilbaai, Jongensfontein and Witsand have long been places where local residents had their holidays. The sandy beaches, rocks, rivers and good fishing attracted local visitors. Better roads and increased mobility helped during the 20th century to unlock their tourism potential significantly. Over the past decade these towns had the most rapid growth rates in Hessequa and the construction industry benefited significantly from the building of

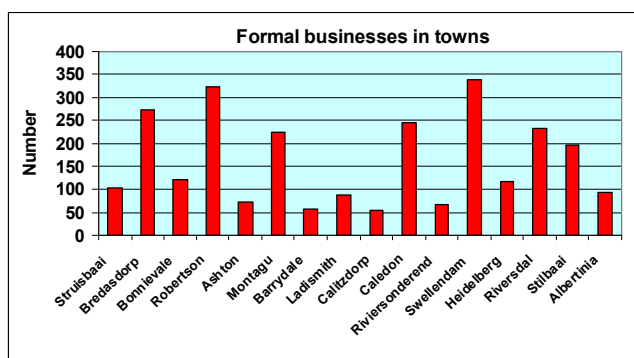
holiday homes. In addition, new tourism opportunities were unlocked, particularly in adventure, agri- and ecotourism. The inland towns have in contrast only benefited to a limited extent from tourism on the N2 (the aloe factories at Albertinia being notable exceptions).



A comparison by Dr Daan Toerien (Komijn Consulting) of the business structures of sixteen towns in the Overberg, South Cape and Little Karoo showed that the number of formal businesses in Stilbaai ranks seventh overall, exceeds those of a number of old towns in the region and is becoming on par with the business structures of towns such as Montagu, Riversdale and Caledon. This illustrates the growing importance of coastal towns in the regional economy and questions the conclusion by Professor van der Merwe and colleagues in the “Plekplan” study of Western Cape towns that Hessequa has limited growth potential.

6.1.7.9 The rise of the retirement industry

The natural beauty of Hessequa, the wonderful climate, high levels of safety and security



and good infrastructure have over the past decade increasingly positioned Hessequa as a preferred retirement destination. This has provided an economic boon to the region. Large sums of money were invested in residential and property development. For instance, about 130 new houses representing an investment of some R100 million were built in Stilbaai alone in 2004. New

pensioners settling in Stilbaai bring an amount of some R4 million annually into the local economy. This is the equivalent of a factory employing more than 100 people and few towns, if any, will have a new factory of such a size every year.

Although construction work is cyclical and not always desired as a sustainable means of job creation, it has over the past decade been a major source of income to large numbers of workers in Hessequa. This industry has provided, and is providing, one of the means whereby black economic empowerment (BEE) can be pursued (see later).

6.1.7.10 Demand cycles

The coastal towns have over the years suffered badly from cyclic business and demand patterns. In peak holiday seasons large numbers of visitors swamp resources and in mid-winter businesses have few clients. As coastal towns grow, business “cyclicity” diminishes and the business environment becomes more stable. The cyclicity also severely strains the ability of the Hessequa municipality to meet demand for services.

6.1.7.11 Brain gain

An unplanned benefit of the rise of the coastal towns and the retirement industry is the skills and experience gained in the form of knowledgeable people that arrive in the region. The large numbers of highly skilled and highly trained people represent a resource from which the region should benefit much more. However, many retired people do not want to be bothered; an issue that should be addressed.

6.1.7.12 Apartheid legacy

A discussion of the Hessequa economic history would not be complete without consideration of the legacies of apartheid. It was described earlier how in the 18th century the Khoi-Khoi and San were pressured out of their traditional areas in the





southern Cape. Some of their descendants became labourers on white farms. Nevertheless some farms were still owned by people of colour, even during the apartheid years.

In Hessequa there are villages that house mostly coloured people, e.g. Slangrivier and Melkhoutfontein. The Group Areas Act introduced tremendous uncertainty in the lives of residents of these towns. Owners of property did not invest in further development or even upkeep of their properties because they were uncertain about the future. By the 1990s, some of these villages were extremely decrepit and poverty stricken. Most have not yet escaped from this legacy.

6.1.8. Concluding remarks on local context

A Hessequa economy skewed abnormally in many respects is the net economic legacy of the regional history and the apartheid years. Patterns of income, ownership and skills are extremely distorted in favour of the white population group, a fact that leads to resentment and distrust. Simply put, the Hessequa economy has to be restructured to overcome inherited weaknesses and historic legacies.

Long-term economic sustainability requires that measures be taken to redress the local economy but in ways that will not upset the economic applecart. To create new and expanded opportunities, it is necessary to build on strengths, to eliminate weaknesses and to exploit new opportunities. To achieve this it is necessary to diversify and grow the Hessequa economy whilst it is restructured in line with national goals re land and business ownership, equitable incomes, BBBEE, etc.

These challenges are daunting. Best practice worldwide teaches that divided communities rarely build strong economies. Hessequa leaders throughout its political, civil, business and religious sectors will have to be involved in the building of trust and a new economy.

The analyses done during the first phases of development of a LED strategy indicated that:

- it is necessary to grow the economy to provide the means to redress historic legacies. In this process its global competitiveness has to be improved,
- the economy must simultaneously be restructured to correct the skewness introduced by historic legacies,
- attention must be paid and plans developed to deal with national goals re land and business ownership, poverty eradication, focus on the Second Economy, BEE charters, income equity, etc., and,
- the needed support structures (or infrastructure) to achieve economic goals must be put in place.

It was realised that: (i) not all issues could be addressed at once, and (ii) it is in most cases necessary to involve the causes of problems in seeking the solutions to these problems. The latter implied that the implementation plans would seek the involvement of all stakeholders in seeking the solutions. Some strategic choices had to be made in terms of what to tackle first. This report outlines these choices.

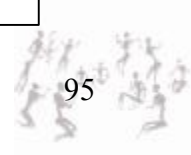
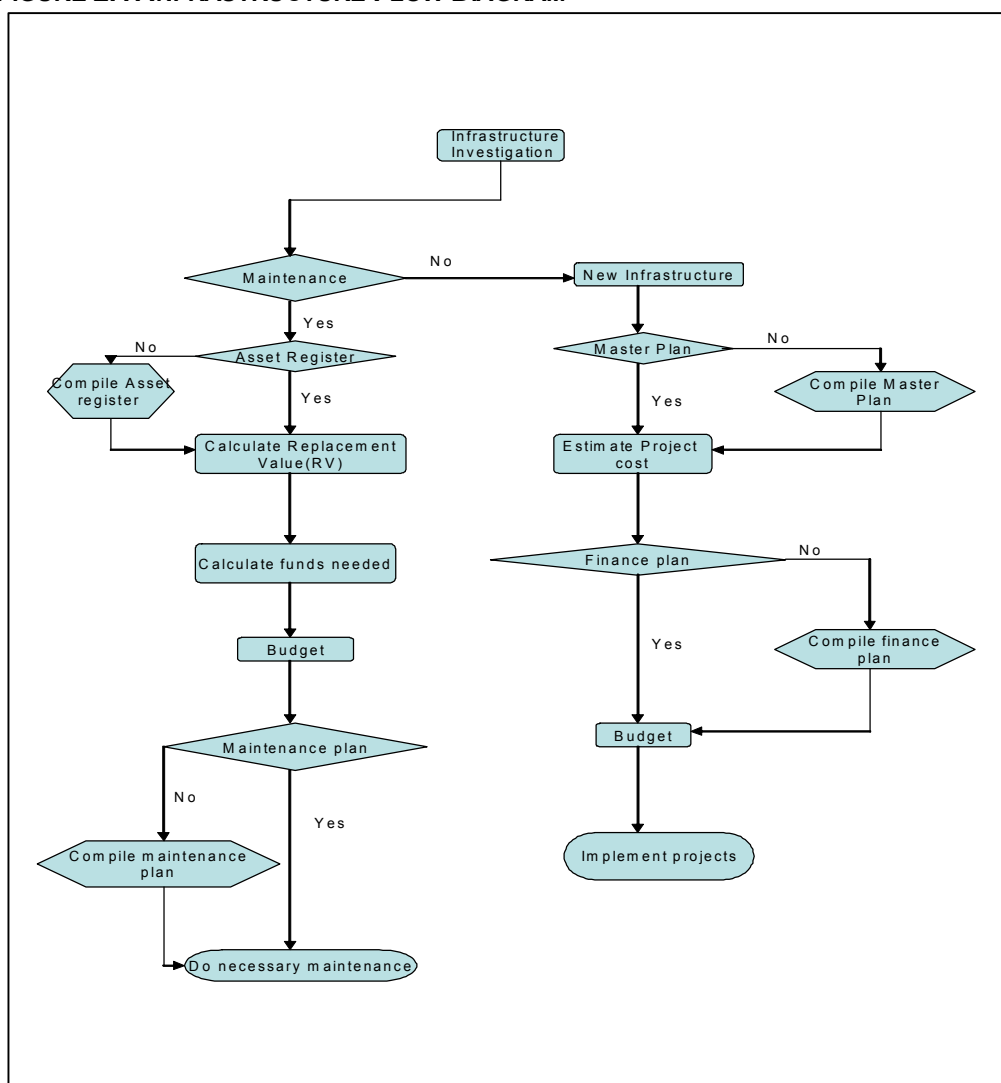


6.2. BASIC INFRASTRUCTURE

To prevent the collapse of the infrastructure within the Hessequa municipal area and to ensure the Municipality's successful delivery of services, it is necessary, firstly, to ensure that existing infrastructure is effectively maintained and secondly, that infrastructure is timeously expanded to cope with demand. (See flow-diagram 2.1.)

One of the most important aspects in enabling any municipality to deliver the necessary services to its residents is to have a responsible and competent technical team. Such a team can be attained by either appointing qualified, experienced staff, or by appointing professional consultants in private practice to assist the staff in meeting their challenges. It is also of vital importance to employ staff who is adept financially and capable of preparing the sophisticated financial plans and approval. Excellent designs and available funding are worthless without the necessary expertise to bring it to fruition. The solution for local authorities to execute the many projects in order to maintain and extend infrastructure whilst on a tight budget, is to manage their resources in a skilful and resourceful manner.

FIGURE 2.1: INFRASTRUCTURE FLOW DIAGRAM





6.2.1.Existing Infrastructure

The replacement value of infrastructure such as roads, storm water, water-, sewer- and electricity networks can escalate into the hundreds of millions of rands - even in smaller municipalities. The Municipal Financial Management Act places a responsibility on municipalities and municipal councils to control, maintain and safeguard these services. It is therefore essential that infrastructure is maintained properly to ensure its successful delivery of the necessary services.

To ensure that infrastructure assets can be used over their full expected life-spans, it is necessary that assets are maintained regularly and timeously. It is therefore important that a certain percentage of an asset's value is spent annually on the maintenance thereof. By using world norms, this percentage is simple to determine.

The compilation of an asset management plan for each asset is essential - to do this an asset register must firstly be compiled to determine the age, condition, etc. of the asset. The following steps are proposed in order to keep up to date with the maintenance of infrastructure assets.

- The compilation of asset registers for each asset group.
- The compilation of an infrastructure asset maintenance plan for each asset group.
- A cost estimation of the implementation of maintenance plans has to be produced.
- Necessary funds to allow for maintenance purposes should be allocated in the operational budget.
- The actual implementation of maintenance plans

A good example of a maintenance plan is the Pavement Management System which has been compiled for the Hessequa municipal area. However, it is now imperative that the proposals and maintenance recommended in the plan is stringently followed each year. It must be remembered that for every year in which the allocated funding is not used on an asset, it increases the cost to save the asset.

6.2.2. New Infrastructure

All municipalities have to timeously identify new infrastructure requirements so that the necessary expansion to the infrastructure can be executed in time. Enough time must be allowed to budget for the costs associated with projects, which necessitates planning well in advance of the actual installation of new infrastructure.



In most municipalities, but especially in the coastal Southern Cape towns, the exceptional growth experienced over the past couple of years exceeded all growth expectations. This greatly affected the construction of new infrastructure. Designs were not in place and funds had not been allocated to provide the necessary infrastructure in time. If innovative plans are not conceived to catch up with the demand in infrastructure, new developments will have to be stopped, resulting in a major negative impact on the economy, loss of jobs (particularly in the semi- and unskilled labour market) and the increase in poverty (especially in the already poverty-stricken communities). The following steps are proposed to keep pace with the construction of new infrastructure.

- The compilation of master plans outlining future demand.
- The provision of cost estimates for all anticipated projects in each asset group.
- The compilation of a financial plan to fund these projects.
- The implementation of the identified projects.
- The annual or bi-annual updating of the various master plans.

6.2.3. Water

The major towns in the Hessequa municipal area have operational water services and mostly comply with the national minimum standards. In the coastal towns a problem with water quality is experienced during high-season.

6.2.3.1. Water Sources

The water sources for the major towns and rural areas are summarized in Table 3.2.

TABLE 3.2: WATER SOURCES FOR MAJOR TOWNS AND RURAL AREA

Towns	Water Source
Albertinia	Six boreholes; Two fountains feeding two reservoirs
Gouritsriviermond	One fountain feeding one reservoir
Heidelberg	Two reticulation reservoirs (Bulk supply by Overberg Water)
Slangrivier	Two reticulation reservoirs (Bulk supply by Overberg Water)
Riversdale	Five reservoirs fed from the Korentepoort Dam
Still Bay	Five springs and fountains, two boreholes and the Olive Grove dam feed nine reservoirs
Melkhoutfontein	One fountain feeds one reservoir



Jongensfontein	One spring and one borehole feeding three reservoirs and a tank
Witsand	Supplied by Overberg Water which is augmented by a borehole and one reservoir
Rural Area	The rural areas are supplied by the Korente- Vette Irrigation Scheme and the Duivenhoks Water Supply Scheme

6.2.3.2. Bulk Water Treatment Capacity

The bulk water treatment and the peak demands are as indicated in Table 3.3.

TABLE 3.3 : WATER TREATMENT CAPACITY

Zone or Town	Total treatment capacity (m ³ /day)	AADD Water Demand (m ³ /day)	Required treatment capacity	Surplus/ Deficit (m ³ /day)
Albertinia	1320	547	820	500
Gouritsriviermond	Not available	273	N/A	N/A
Heidelberg	5000*	4265	6911*	-1911*
Slangrivier	See Heidelberg	130	See Heidelberg	
Riversdale	5800	2998	4497	-1303
Still Bay and Melkhoutfontein	5740	3751	6427	-687
Jongensfontein	420	311	560	-140
Witsand	See Heidelberg	177	See Heidelberg	

***Heidelberg, Slangrivier and Witsand are served by the Duivenhoks Water Treatment Plant with a capacity of 5000m³/day. When calculated, the treatment capacity demands for all three towns were taken into account.**

The water treatment capacity required to cover demand during peak times, was calculated using the AADD for each town as stipulated in the water master plan, times 1.5 for the inland towns and times 1.8 for the coastal towns. This figure may vary from town to town and will have to be fully investigated prior to any extension/s to treatment plants are made.





The *required treatment demand* is intended to serve the current usage and no future additional usage has been included.

6.2.3.3. Internal Supply

The Municipality owns and operates all of the internal urban water elements such as water pump stations, bulk reservoirs and water distribution networks. The rural networks are operated and maintained by water boards and irrigation schemes.

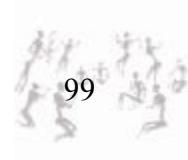
6.2.3.4. Water Balance

The results of the water balance calculations performed for the 2004/2005 financial year are stipulated in Table 3.4.

TABLE 3.4: WATER BALANCE of the available water is of a very poor or variable quality.

* Zone or Town	Bulk water abstracted (m ³ /a)	Water quota/permit allocation (m ³ /a)	Surplus/ Deficit (m ³ /a)
Albertinia	440 920	488 808	47 888
Gouritsriviermond	150 380	850 000	699 620
Heidelberg	406 610	370 000	-36 610
Slangrivier	62 780	63 000	220
Riversdale	1 246 475	1 200 000	-46 000
Still Bay & Melkhoutfontein	2 007 500	2 871 000*	863 500*
Jongensfontein	164 980	160 000	-6 980
Witsand	73 000	72 000	-1000

It was shown in the *Western Cape Sanitation Backlog Study* that the current annual average daily water demand for the Hessequa Municipality - excluding Still Bay and Witsand - is 6 960 m³/day, which figure it is anticipated to increase to 14694 m³/day in 2027. This suggests that for the mentioned areas, the bulk water allocation will have to increase from approximately 2.5 million m³ to 5.3 million m³ by the year 2027. Once the updated water master plan for the Hessequa Municipality is released towards the end of March 2007, a more accurate indication of required water will be available.





Although numerous studies into the availability of water in the different towns have been done, it is imperative that an updated report in this regard is done for the entire municipal area in question. In such a report the possibilities of seawater desalination, the direct and indirect re-use of waste water must be focussed on. Desalination and the re-use of waste water are increasingly being favoured as viable solutions as the cost of the membranes used in these technologies have, over the past 10 years, significantly decreased in price.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is at present conducting the *Outeniqua Coastal Water Situation* study. This study is intended to investigate the nature and extent of the water-balance problems within the area and aims to identify problematic areas, as well as to evaluate possible reconciliation strategies to alleviate the yield-deficit and to make adequate provision for the Ecological Reserve of the streams and rivers in the area. The water situation from Still Bay to Knysna will be addressed. From the Hessequa Municipality's perspective, this study may provide answers to some of the towns within their region.

6.2.3.5. Backlog in Services

According to a report done by CES Consulting Engineers for the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, the backlog of water delivery to the Hessequa municipal area (in order to eliminate the imbalances of the past), amounts to 3 355 kL/day. This equates to 1 224 575m³ per annum.

6.2.3.6. Water Infrastructure Projects

Although the Water Services Development Plan specifies some of the capital projects needed, the Water Master Plan does not provide such a list. It is standard for a water master plan to pinpoint any shortcomings in the systems and to recommend where systems require upgrading. This, however, was not provided in the plan supplied in 2004 and, although the analysis was done, no mention was made of any upgrade to the existing systems. An analysis for future demand was also not supplied. This is something that will have to be done as a matter of urgency. It is understood, however, that CES Engineers is currently busy with an update of the Master Plan which will include a list of projects and should be available by the end of March 2007. Attached as Annexure A, please find the proposed 2007/2008 Capital Budget that reflects projects for the next five years. More detail on the water situation in the Hessequa municipal area can be obtained from the 2007 Water Services Development Plan

6.2.4. Sewerage

Master plans for the different towns in the Hessequa municipal area were compiled in 2005 by CES Consulting Engineers. According to these plans, as well as the Water Services Development Plan compiled in 2005 by Liebenberg and Stander, the service delivery in most of the major towns is on a par with what is required.



6.2.4.1. Waste Water Treatment Capacity

The waste water treatment capacities available in each town, as well as the current demand, are stipulated in Table 3.5.

TABLE 3.5: TREATMENT CAPACITY

Zone or town	Waste water treatment capacity (kL/day)	Current actual Peak day dry weather flow (kL/day)	Surplus/Deficit (kL/day)
Albertinia	1000	574	426
Gouritsmond	unknown	0	0
Heidelberg	2000	480	1520
Slangrivier	unknown	150	
Riversdale	3500	546	2954
Still Bay	3700	unknown	
Melkhoutfontein	unknown	189	
Jongensfontein	unknown	unknown	
Witsand	unknown	unknown	

The towns in the Hessequa area are served with full waterborne and septic tank systems. Gouritsmond, for example, has only septic tanks systems; Riversdale only waterborne systems; and Jongensfontein has both. These systems function well but require regular maintenance. Problems are experienced with the bulk conveying of sewage in Still Bay. The waste water treatment plant in Heidelberg is constructed below the 1:50-year flood level of the Duivenhoks River and was damaged quite considerably in 2004 and again in 2006. Plans are underway to move these works to a more suitable location.

6.2.4.3. Backlog in Services

According to the report compiled by CES in January 2007, the current backlog in sanitation within the Hessequa municipal area is as shown in table 3.6.

TABLE 3.6: BACKLOG IN SANITATION

Town	Number of Households				Estimated future backlog due to
	Informal housing with no access to basic	Informal housing with access to shared	Backyard dwellers (BD) with access to shared	Total existing backlog	



	sanitation (excluding BD)	services (excluding BD)	services		growth
Albertinia	0	0	652	652	130
Gouritsmond	13	0	36	49	0
Heidelberg	60	25	684	769	155
Jongensfontein	0	0	0	0	0
Melkhoutfontein	0	40	627	667	133
Vermaaklikheid	28	0	0	28	0
Riversdale	0	30	912	942	942
Slangrivier	25	0	491	516	0
Still Bay	0	0	0	0	0
Witsand	0	0	0	0	0

6.2.4.5. Summary of Cost to Eradicate the Sanitation Backlog

The estimated cost to eradicate the backlog in sanitation within the Hessequa municipal area as calculated by CES is as illustrated in Table 3.7. As Still Bay and Witsand do not experience a sanitation backlog, they are not included in the cost estimate.

TABLE 3.7: SUMMARY OF COST ESTIMATES TO ERADICATE THE SANITATION BACKLOG

Town	Total cost for bulk water infrastructure	Total cost for bulk sewer infrastructure	Total cost for internal water and sewer infrastructure	Total cost to eradicate sanitation backlog
Albertinia	R 18 803 000	R 8 413 000	R 5 216 000	R 32 432 000
Gouritsmond	R 3 700 000	R 1 489 000	R 393 000	R 5 581 000
Heidelberg	R 3 220 000	R 15 860 000	R 6 152 000	R 25 232 000
Melkhoutfontein	R 6 911 000	R 3 808 000	R 5 336 000	R 16 055 000
Riversdale	R 21 476 000	R 4 020 000	R 7 536 000	R 33 032 000
Slangrivier	R 0	R 1 549 000	R 4 128 000	R 5 677 000
Totals	R 54 110 000	R 35 139 000	R 28 760 000	R118 009 000

6.2.4.6. Waste Water Infrastructure Projects



Although the Water Services Development Plan specified some of the required capital projects, the Waste Water Master Plan - with the exception of Still Bay, did not. It is standard for a water master plan to specify any shortcomings in the systems and to make recommendations on where the systems need to be upgraded. This was not the case in the Plan done in 2004 - and although the analysis was done, no mention could be found of any upgrading of existing systems, nor was an analysis included on future demand. This is something that requires urgent attention. It is, however, understood that CES Engineers is currently busy with the updating of the Master Plan which ought to be available by the end of October 2007 which should include a list of projects.

Attached herewith as Annexure A, please find the proposed 2007/2008 Capital Budget that reflects projects for the next five years. More detail on the waste water situation within the Hessequa municipal area can be obtained from the 2007 Water Services' Development Plan.

6.2.5. Roads and Transport

6.2.5.1. Roads

Up to now, the Hessequa Municipality has not compiled a road master plan for the area. Such a plan needs to be done in the near future to determine what new roads need to be built in order for the road network to keep up with increasing traffic volumes - especially in coastal towns such as Still Bay.

The Pavement Management Systems done for the Hessequa municipal area indicate that there are 203.3 km of paved roads and 31.3 km of unpaved roads (consisting of 6,6 km gravel roads and 24.7 km dirt roads). The average condition of the paved road network can be rated as fair-to-poor, with 26% of the surfacing and 18% of the structure of the paved roads presently being in a poor- to-very-poor condition. It is further estimated that the remaining lives of the surfacing and the structures are 4 and 9 years respectively. The unpaved road network can be rated as good - with only 10% of the unpaved roads in a poor-to-very-poor condition.

An amount of R2 million will have to be spent annually on maintaining the paved roads; and R110 000 on the unpaved roads. The cost for upgrading these roads can be seen in Table 3.8. To calculate the 2007 cost, 20% was added to the 2005 cost.

TABLE 3.8: ESTIMATED COST TO UPGRADE AND MAINTAIN ROADS

Type of roads	Upgrading required	Cost (2005)	Cost (2007)
▷ ◁ ◂ ◃	Routine maintenance	R 110 000	R 132 000





	Upgrade dirt roads to gravel roads	R 2 300 000	R 2 760 000
	Upgrade all unpaved roads to paved standard	R17 100 000	R20 520 000
Paved roads	Routine maintenance	R 2 000 000	R 2 400 000
	Resurfacing (over two years)	R12 900 000	R15 480 000
	Rehabilitation (over 5 years)	R27 600 000	R33 120 000

6.2.5.2. Transport

The Eden District Municipality, funded by the Provincial Administration of the Western Cape (PAWC), compiled the *Current Public Transport Records (CPTR)*, an *Operating Licence Strategy (OLS)*, a *Public Transport Plan (PTP)* as well as an *Integrated Transport Plan (ITP)* for the entire Eden municipal area.

The public transport service provided by taxies in Riversdale and Heidelberg respectively, is very basic and operates between the central business districts and the townships only. As result of the proximity of the townships to towns, many commuters are making use of alternative modes of transport such as cycling and walking. The most significant problem associated with public transport is the lack of regular, reliable transport between residential areas, and, in many cases, rural areas. Safety also plays an important part as there is a general feeling among commuters that the existing buses and taxis are not roadworthy. In Riversdale specifically, signalised pedestrian crossings and other traffic-calming measures are required to facilitate the safe crossing of the N2 by pedestrians. Table 3.9 indicates the transport infrastructure requirements and estimated costs within the municipal area.

TABLE 3.9: TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE REQUIREMENTS AND ESTIMATED COSTS

	Facility	Town	Status	Cost Estimates
Public Transport	Main Taxi Ranks	Riversdale	New rank required	R 2 100 000
		Heidelberg	New rank required	R 2 100 000
	Taxi	Riversdale	Upgrade 1100m to paved surface	R 2 310 000
		Heidelberg	Upgrade 1070m to paved surface	R 3 470 000



	Routes	Slangrivier	Upgrade 2620 m to paved surface	R 3 150 000
		Still Bay	Upgrade 450m to paved surface	R 4 235 000
	Mini Ranks	Slangrivier	New mini rank required	R 1 650 000
	Taxi Stops and Shelters	Heidelberg	5 x new stops and shelters	R 550 000
		Slangrivier	1 x new stop and shelter	R 110 000
Private Transport	Signalised pedestrian crossing over N2	Riversdale	Crossing over N2	R 275 000

It is necessary for several studies and master plans to be compiled so as to complete the investigation into the transport situation within the municipal area. The plans as illustrated in the Integrated Transport Plan are listed in Table 3.10 below.

TABLE 3.10: TRANSPORT PLANS STILL OUTSTANDING

Master Plans or Plans		Cost Estimates
Public Transport	Non motorised transport master plan	R 175 000
	Taxi facility strategic plan	R 77 000
	Farm dweller transport plan	R 110 000
	Learner transport plan	R 110 000
	Special needs user plan	R 66 000
	Mobility Strategy	R 200 000
Private Transport	Freight plan	R 175 000

6.2.6. Storm water

The storm water infrastructure within the Hessequa municipal area has never been assessed. Heavy rainstorms experienced in the past (as in December 2004 and in August 2006) and accompanying floods lead to serious damage to infrastructure. It is important, therefore, that storm water issues are no longer ignored - intervention is needed to prevent future damage. V&V Consulting Engineers were appointed in 2006 to complete a storm water master plan for



this municipal area. Their report is expected shortly. From this report it should be possible to identify and budget for storm water upgrades in a prioritised, structured manner.

However, storm water management plans will also have to be drawn up for the urban areas. The storm water master plan currently being compiled by V&V will only focus on storm water infrastructure and the shortcomings thereof. There are, however, a number of alternative management tools which could be used to manage storm water efficiently in the different catchment areas. It is imperative, therefore, that the necessary storm water management plans for the different catchment areas are drawn up.

6.2.7. Electricity

6.2.7.1 Background on existing municipal services

The Hessequa Municipality provides electrical services to the following 8 electricity distribution areas.

- Within the old Riversdale municipal area:
urban, as well as part of the surrounding rural areas.
- Within the old Heidelberg municipal area:
urban, as well as part of the surrounding rural areas.
- Within the old Albertinia municipal area:
urban, as well as part of the surrounding rural areas.
- Within the old Stilbaai municipal area:
urban area.
- Within the old Jongensfontein municipal area:
urban area.
- Within the old Melkhoutfontein municipal area:
urban area.
- Within the old Witsand municipal area:
urban area.
- Within the old Gouritsmond municipal area:
urban area.

In the supply areas mentioned above, electricity is supplied to 13 057 consumers - of which 5 467 use pre-paid electricity. The consumer totals in each town are as stipulated in Table 3.11 below.

TABLE 3.11: CONSUMER TOTALS FOR EACH TOWN

	Consumers
--	------------------



Town	Total	Standard meter	Pre-Paid meter
Riversdal	5,322	1,832	2,140
Albertinia	1,190	555	635
Gouritsmond	382	342	40
Stilbaai	2,577	2,566	11
Jongensfontein	433	433	-
Melkhoutfontein	392	12	380
Heidelberg	2,150	1,235	920
Witsand	606	606	-

Consumers receive 20 kWh free electricity per month with 1350 indigent consumers who receive 50 kWh per month for free.

Eskom supplies electricity to Slangrivier (619 consumers) as well as to the remainder of the rural areas not mentioned above.

6.2.7.2 Status Quo

In the municipal supply areas, 99,99 % of all houses are electrified. The outstanding 0.01 % will be electrified in the 2007/2008 financial year. Plans are afoot to deliver electrical services to approximately 2000 low-cost houses which are to be constructed over the next 5 years. These services are to be funded by the Department of Mineral and Energy Affairs (DME), the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG), as well as from the Council's own internal capital budget.

An increase in the development of middle-to-high-income residential erven is expected over the next few years. Developers are currently doing feasibility studies to develop approximately 4000 erven in the Hessequa municipal towns. Because of the proposed developments and an expected growth rate of 8 %, it is vital for the Municipality to appoint consulting engineers to do an investigation into the distribution networks of all their towns - overhead as well as underground. The bulk supply delivered by Eskom also has to be investigated. Due to lack of funds, the distribution networks in towns like Riversdale, Albertinia and Heidelberg are older than 40 years as upgrades were only carried out where voltage drops were experienced. Most of the distribution networks in Still Bay, Witsand and Goutritsmond are about 30 years old and installed underground. Electricity to new developments is currently installed underground - saving on long-term maintenance costs.

The national and global electricity supply problems experienced during the past year have necessitated the Council to consider using energy-saving equipment, as well as to investigate new sources of energy, e.g.:

- The installation of solar-powered hot water cylinders in all new developments.



- Street lighting to be replaced with energy-saving bulbs - an 80 % target has been set over the next three years.
- The management of electricity demand.

6.2.7.3 Priorities for the next 3 years

- The extension of the main supply to Still Bay which is set to reach its peak capacity within three years.
- An investigation into the municipal distribution networks, as well the bulk supply from Eskom.
- Adequate funding with which to affect proper maintenance is to be allowed for in the Operational Budget.
- In order to meet the expected growth over the next 20 years, low- and high-voltage master- plans have to be compiled.
- An investigation into recoverable energy sources as well the use of energy-saving equipment must be made.

6.2.7.4 Municipal vehicle fleet

More than 60 % of the Municipality's vehicle fleet is older than 10 years — which means that maintenance costs escalate annually.

No fixed replacement policy exists and vehicles are only replaced once maintenance proves uneconomical. This was caused due to the lack of available funds with which to replace vehicles at regular intervals. It is imperative that a vehicle replacement policy be compiled as soon as possible or, alternatively, that the Municipality investigates the option of outsourcing the vehicle management to a fleet management company. It is of critical importance that adequate funds are provided for in the Operational Budget for vehicles to be replaced according to a predetermined policy.

It is recommended, however, that the Municipality investigates the outsourcing of the fleet management, as well as the possible leasing of a vehicle fleet.

6.2.8. Solid Waste

6.2.8.1. Waste management plan

An integrated waste management plan was compiled for the Hessequa municipal area by Kwezi V3 (consulting engineers) in November 2005. The findings of that report were as follows.

- The six areas of focus for the development of a complete service are:





- disposal infrastructure development;
 - waste collection infrastructure;
 - resource extension;
 - waste minimisation;
 - management of illegal activities; and
 - a waste information system.
- The Hessequa Municipality has limited resources - especially during peak seasons.
 - The Slangrivier landfill site has to be improved.
 - The Droëkloof landfill site is to be sloped in such a way that it will improve drainage and surface-water flow.
 - The Jongensfontein-, Melkhoutfontein- and Albertinia landfill sites should be closed.
 - A new landfill site should be constructed for the Melkhoutfontein service area.
 - There is poor control over the disposal of fish-, abattoir-, medical-, industrial- and other hazardous waste.
 - The entire Eden district is in need of a regional, hazardous-waste landfill site.
 - The establishment of community awareness Programmes with a communication-channel to all waste generators in the area.
 - Record-keeping of waste collection, disposal per area, waste types and waste volumes are essential and should be maintained and refined.
 - The Municipality has no fixed system according to which equipment is replaced.
 - The average life span of waste management equipment is 11 years.
 - New developments and un-serviced areas - especially rural areas - should be incorporated into the existing delivery systems.
 - By-laws that suit the current requirements of the Municipality, the public and the surrounding areas have to be established.
 - The burning of garden waste together with the lack of control over garden refuse and building rubble disposal, is a major concern.





Hessequa Municipality currently has eight operational landfill sites, namely Droëkloof General Waste, Droëkloof Garden Refuse, Melkhoutfontein, Steynskloof, Slangrivier General Waste, Slangrivier Garden Refuse, Gouritsmond and Witsand.

It is predicted that the total waste generated in the municipal area will increase from 48 765 tons per year in 2007 to 65 431 tons per year in 2015 - an increase of 34%. The Integrated Waste Management Plan indicates the following budgets for infra-structure improvements in the area.

TABLE 3.12: PROJECTS AND COST ESTIMATES FOR IMPROVEMENT OF WASTE LANDFILL SITES

Projects	COST ESTIMATES					
	2007/2008	2008/2009	2009/2010	2010/2011	5-10 years	10-15 years
Rehabilitate and close Jongensfontein, Melkhoutfontein and Albertinia landfill sites	R180 000		R530 000	R30 000		
New landfill site in Melkhoutfontein	R180 000	R500 000				
Upgrade Slangrivier Landfill site	R 25 000	R 25 000				
Improve Drainage at the Droëkloof Landfill site	No cost assigned					
Improve access control at landfill sites	R200 000					
Improve control over building rubble and garden refuse	R300 000	R2 000	R90 700	R97 956	R105 792	R114 256





6.3. HOUSING

6.3.1. INTRODUCTION

The delivery of all development in a social responsible manner is crucial to the Municipality. Housing is the core of all development and is a critical priority of the Municipality. The delivery of houses cannot be seen in isolation and is a vehicle to improve the quality of life of all by focusing on eliminating homelessness, informal settlements and shacks as one of the means to address poverty. This municipality is also a catalyst in the development of land owned by the municipality and it is incumbent on the unit to determine the most appropriate use for municipal land as well as increase the value of developable land in the context of the Spatial Development Framework and other planning policies of the Council. All development must be done in an integrated and sustainable manner and the creation of new development should take into account the public interest balanced with private sector interests.

6.3.2. Purpose and Objectives towards Vision 2027

- The integrated delivery of houses in a socially responsible manner by 2014.
- Eliminate homelessness by 15% per annum.
- Eliminate informal settlements or shacks by June 2014.
- Continually ensure the use of land is legal and compliant with relevant legislation.
- Facilitate the development of physically, socially and economically sustainable & integrated communities in the development of land and housing.

Hessequa Municipality will facilitate the establishment and maintenance of integrated and sustainable human settlements by making use of an Implementing Agent to ensure economically viable and socially equitable communities through the whole of Hessequa, with ecological integrity promoting convenient and safe access to economic opportunities, health, educational and social amenities.

The main purposes of this Housing Chapter are the following:

1. Effective allocation of limited resources to a variety of development initiatives.
2. Providing guidance in prioritising housing projects.
3. Ensuring integrated development.
4. Ensuring budget allocations are effectively applied for maximum impact.
5. Provision of Spatial Development Framework and the physical implementation of the respective projects.
6. To ensure there is definite focus i.t.o. housing contained in the IDP.
7. Providing the IDP process with adequate information about the housing Programme, its benefits, parameters as well as strategic and operational requirements.
8. Ensuring that the contents and process requirements of planning for housing are adequately catered for in the IDP process.

In terms of Housing the following **structures** currently exists:

- Formal Housing : 92,15% of total inhabitants
- Informal dwelling in backyards : 3,18% of total inhabitants:
- Informal dwellings not in backyard: : 4,44% of total inhabitants



The **perception of condition of dwellings/houses** is the following:

- Very satisfied : 19,76% of total inhabitants
- Satisfied : 51,59% of total inhabitants
- Dissatisfied : 1,61% of total inhabitants
- Highly dissatisfied : 6,81% of total inhabitants

Statistics were drawn from the Eden District Municipalities` survey that was conducted during 2006.

The unemployed will be considered for RDP Housing, UISP as well as RENTAL UNITS while the employed will be considered for GAP HOUSING.

The delivery of housing stock is dependant upon funding allocation from Province.

6.3.3. Housing needs i.t.o. waiting list

The current **housing need** (based on waiting list) in the Hessequa area are 4057 units, and can be break down as follows:

- Riversdale : 1 058 units
- Albertinia : 801 units
- Gouritsmond : 54 units
- Heidelberg : 860 units
- Slangrivier : 573 units
- Stilbaai + Melkhoutfontein : 711 units
- Witsand : 0 units

In considering housing delivery issues, special attention will have to be given to the following:

- Women headed households
- People with special needs – the physically challenged, HIV/Aids, TB, etc.
- Child headed households.
- The effect / impact of migration patterns, in-migration and seasonality of the agricultural sector.

Various Housing subsidy instruments (Provincial Programmes) exist and the one(s) of choice will depend upon the – profile – of the people on the housing waiting list. Thus the following housing instruments will be applied in delivering of housing in Hessequa:

- Project linked subsidies
- Individual subsidies
- Consolidation subsidies
- Institutional subsidies (rentals)
- Rural subsidies (farm workers)
- Upgrading of informal settlements Programme
- Emergency Housing Programme

6.3.4. Municipal Infrastructure

MIG: In terms of services, the Hessequa Municipal area does have

1. Piped and purified water
2. Water borne sewerage systems





The towns of Heidelberg and Slangrivier have challenges in so far as adequate bulk services infrastructure i.t.o. water and sewerage and will have to be addressed through MIG Programme.

Human capacity (internal and external) will have to be strengthened through various Programmes (skills development, capacity building courses / workshops, etc.). Financial capacity to be strengthened.

6.3.5. Housing and Land

Strategies should be developed to use land directly to alleviate poverty and encourage job creation and to stimulate the economic growth of disadvantaged communities. The Municipality must also improve the value of its land. Planning for the use and the distribution of land must be governed by the principle that land is not expendable and is a primary resource for development. Private sector, community and civil society institutions have to be capacitated to assist the Municipality in the effective and affordable use of this scarce resource. Land use management should actively seek ways in which land can be optimally used over time.

Suitable land is a scarce commodity in the area and will have to be addressed in drawing up of the Spatial Development Framework. Mixed land use developments, densification amongst others will ensure liveable, equitable, integrated and sustainable towns. Public transport planning is also of importance to reduce travelling distances of beneficiaries.

6.4. SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

6.4.1. Introduction and Context

This Hessequa Social Development Programme is set in the context of National-, Provincial- and District government's policies strategies. It is deliberately set in the context of the Batho Pele Policy which consists of 7 critical principles to which this document is aligned. The focus on the Hessequa Social Development Programme thus centres around these principles, which includes: Citizens/Customers should be consulted about all levels of service, they should be told about the level of service, they should have equal access to the services to which they are entitled, and should be treated with courtesy. Citizens/Customers should be given full accurate information, they should be told how the institution are run, how much it cost and who is charged. Citizens/Customers should be offered an apology, a full explanation and speedy effective remedy if complaints are made and should be treated with sympathetic positive response.

The Western Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS), known as IKapa elihlumayo directs our effort to a holistic approach where we all take up the unique developmental challenges we experience. Within this context our Programme assists to see Hessequa grow, to the best benefits of its people both individually and collectively. The Hessequa Social Development Programme is therefore aligned to the pillars of the IKapa, especially with regards to social capital, social regeneration and human capital development. In contains as a result, short and long term strategies, combined economic intervention. This document of ours is also aligned to the Eden District Municipal IDP, as well as the outcomes of the EDEN Growth and Development Summit (GDS) that was held in November 2006. At the EDEN GDS the key focus of the Social Development





deliberations related around: Poverty Alleviation and Social Welfare, Poverty Reduction and Sustainable Livelihoods. Emphasis was placed on using livelihood assets to reduce poverty by investing in human capital, social and political capital, physical capital, financial capital, and natural capital which guided us in drafting this document of ours with our specific focus areas

6.4.2. Key Focus Areas

Set within this progressive policy framework and based on the robust stakeholder participation Hessequa Municipality has engaged in some key focus areas for priority intervention came to the fore. A range of interventions were identified by a broad range of stakeholders and role-players. This new way of IDP public participation was welcomed by both stakeholders and community groups, as it allowed them to directly influence the nature and outcomes contained in the Hessequa 2nd Generation IDP.

The following key areas were identified on Social Development: Youth Development, HIV & AIDS, - vulnerable groups.

6.4.3. Current Reality

There is a lack of opportunities for young people to express themselves and to live life on all social, cultural, economic and spiritual spheres. There is non-existent database of all service providers, community-based non-governmental organisations as well as a data base of information and resources available to young people. No adequate specific youth development Programmes are in place to build capacity and training and to create jobs. When it comes to HIV/AIDS there is a lack of education, awareness, response, treatment, care and Programmes. There is a need for much more focussed intervention by NGO's in partnership with the Hessequa Municipality and the community to work together to effectively address and care for people infected and affected by HIV & AIDS. The Hessequa social fibre is under great threat, and there is definitely a drop in family values. The increase in substance abuse contributes to the drop in ethical and moral values, early drop outs in schools, increasing family abuse especially amongst women and children abuses. Community safety is becoming a serious issue because of unemployment and many other issues in our communities and early teenage pregnancy is rising mainly because there is no interaction and Programmes run for the youth and other vulnerable people. Housing, transport, hospital services, and access to other government services is lacking regarding our elders. In some cases valuable public services are just terminated without informing, or consulting with the Hessequa Municipality or beneficiary communities. An example includes the termination of HIV/AIDS counselling services by Department of Health. There is no or minimum access to public and private buildings, information, job opportunities, disable friendly housing, transport and hospital services to disable people.



CHAPTER 7: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK : SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

7.1.TERRESTRIAL AQUATIC THREATS AND CHALLENGES

7.1.1. Hessequa Terrestrial Component

Hessequa largely boasts the unique Fynbos vegetation. Many Fynbos species are extremely localized in their distribution, with sets of such localized species organized into "centres of endemism." The Hessequa sits almost squarely on one such centre of endemism and several hundred species are threatened by urban expansion. However, a more serious threat is alien plants, which infest large tracts of otherwise undisturbed mountains and lowlands: their impact on these extremely localized species is severe. Aliens are thus the major threat to Fynbos vegetation and its plant diversity, especially in the mountains. On the lowlands and on the less steep slopes the major threat is agriculture - new technologies, fertilisers and crops are steadily eating into our floral reserves. Another important threat is the misuse of fire. Fynbos must burn, but fires in the wrong season (such as in spring, instead of late summer) or too frequently (so that plants do not have time to set seed) eliminate species. Several factors influence fire dynamics in Fynbos - global warming, grazing practices and fire management (ignition events, size of burns), but their relative importance and interactions are poorly understood.

The two major vegetation groupings in Fynbos are quite distinct and have contrasting ecological systems. Essentially, Renosterveld used to contain the large animals in the Hessequa, but these are now extinct or else have been reintroduced into conservation areas. By contrast, Fynbos is much richer in plant species, but has such poor soils that it cannot support even low densities of big game. However, most of the endemic amphibian, bird and mammal species in the Hessequa, occur in Fynbos vegetation.

7.1.1.1 Renosterveld

Renosterveld is characterized by the dominance of members of the Daisy Family (Asteraceae), specifically one species - Renosterbos *Elytropappus rhinocerotis*, from which the vegetation type gets its name. Although Renosterbos is the characteristic dominant, many other plants are also prominent - for instance in the Daisy Family (Asteraceae): *Eriocephalus*, *Felicia*, *Helichrysum*, *Pteronia*, *Relhania*; Pea Family (Fabaceae): *Aspalathus*; Gardenia Family (Rubiaceae): *Anthospermum*; Cocoa Family (Sterculiaceae): *Hermannia*; Thyme Family (Thymelaeaceae): *Passerina*. All these shrubs are characterized by their small, tough, grey leaves.

Grasses should also be abundant. In fact, it is alleged that the high shrub cover is a result of continuous grazing. Early records suggest that the Renosterveld had abundant grasses, and that the game and Khoi cattle migrated over the region. With the establishment of European stock farmers, continuous grazing and the elimination of the diverse grazing-browsing fauna, the shrubby element was promoted.

Another feature of Renosterveld is the high species richness of geophytic plants (chiefly in the Iris Family (Iridaceae) and Lily Family (Liliaceae), but also in the Orchid Family





(Orchidaceae). Proteas, Ericas and Restios - typical of Fynbos - tend to be absent in Renosterveld, or are present at very low abundances. There are few endemics to Renosterveld vegetation alone, many of the species occurring in Fynbos as well.

Because of its high soil fertility, it is probable that all the herds of large game in the Fynbos Biome occurred in Renosterveld. Thus Mountain Zebra, Quagga, Bluebuck, Red Hartebeest, Eland, Bontebok, Elephant, Black Rhino and Buffalo were common, as were Lion, Cheetah, Wild Dog, Spotted Hyena and Leopard. Two of these only ever occurred within the Fynbos Biome: Bluebuck and Bontebok. Of these large mammals, only the Mountain Zebra and Leopard survived (by fleeing to the mountains), with the Bontebok just surviving near Bredasdorp. All the other species became extinct in the Fynbos Biome (one elephant survives in the Forest Biome within the Fynbos Biome area), although many have been introduced into conservation areas from outside the region. The Quagga and Bluebuck are extinct.

This high fertility has meant that most of the area has been converted to agriculture. Less than 5% of Renosterveld remains (the Rio Convention has as its goal the preservation of 10%!), with other Renosterveld types also heavily ploughed or used as augmented pasture. It seems unlikely that viable populations of large mammals will ever be reintroduced into the Fynbos Biome for this reason.

7.1.1.2.FYNBOS

The various Fynbos vegetation types comprise most of the area of the Fynbos Biome. Fynbos is characterized by the presence of the following three elements:

1. A restioid component, belonging to the Restionaceae or the Cape Reed Family. Some definitions require a mere 5% cover of restioids in an area to classify it as a Fynbos vegetation type. The Restionaceae have been described as shrubby grasses, and replace grasses on nutrient-poor soils where there is a strong winter component to the annual rainfall. Sedges and many grasses within Fynbos also share the "restioid" characters of reduced or absent leaves and tough, wiry stems.
2. An ericoid or heath component. By far the majority of plant species - and the greatest cover after restioids comprise plants with small, narrow, rolled leaves with thick-walled cells on the upper leaf surface and a channel containing hairs on the lower surface. Although the Heaths (Ericaceae) feature prominently, the Daisy (Asteraceae), Blacktip (Bruniaceae), Pea (Fabaceae), Jujube (Rhamnaceae) and Thyme (Thymelaeaceae) Families also have structurally similar leaves. Many of these plants are wispy and insubstantial, although some form quite dense bushes.
3. A proteoid component. These plants, almost exclusively of the Proteaceae, have broad, isobilateral (both surfaces similar) leaves. They are the dominant overstorey in Fynbos. Although some members occur in ecotones and some occur in Renosterveld, by far the majority are confined to Fynbos.

Fynbos is characterized by the presence of seven endemic or near-endemic plant families: Blacktips (Bruniaceae), Gyalone (Geissolomaceae), Sillyberry (Grubbiaceae), Brickleaf (Penaeaceae), Buttbrush (Retziaceae), Dewstick (Roridulaceae) and Candlestick (Stilbaceae). Only the Bruniaceae (75 spp.), Penaeaceae (21 spp.) and





Stilbaceae (13 spp.) comprise more than five species. The fifteen largest families comprise 70% of the species in the Fynbos Biome (Table 3).

Over 7 000 plant species occur in the Fynbos vegetation types. Endemicity is very high - some plant species are confined to the Hessequa. The majority of these, although exact numbers are unknown, are confined to one or more areas.

Many species have very narrow distributional ranges. Thus, based on the Proteaceae for which we have the most finely detailed data, some 24 centers of endemism (areas with species sharing similar localized distributional ranges) have been identified.

A structural approach, suggested by Campbell in 1985, recognizes Proteoid, Ericaceous, Restioid, Asteraceous, Shrubby and Grassy vegetation types. This approach denies a difference in Fynbos types between the mountains and the lowlands of the Biome. However, the different types occur on a scale too fine to map here Ericaceous on the wet, upper south slopes, Asteraceous on the drier northern slopes and the wetter, shale-derived soils, Restioid on the winter water-logged and summer and slopes, and Proteoid on the richer colluvial, sandstone-derived soils. Shrubby Fynbos is ecotonal to forest where rock outcrops, gorges and stream courses protect the vegetation from fires, and Grassy Fynbos predominates where the summer component of the rainfall allows grasses to out-compete the restioids. These basic components are further subdivided into over 60 types based on structural adaptations.

Fynbos vegetation types occur predominantly on well-leached, infertile soils. The Hessequa sandstones typically produce such soils, but under high rainfall conditions, granites and even shales become sufficiently leached to support Asteraceous Fynbos, replacing Renosterveld. This usually occurs at about 600 to 800 mm annual rainfall, but may be much less on granites, especially at higher altitudes. Fynbos has a low animal biomass, although species richness of birds, mammals, frogs, reptiles and insects is quite high, and most Fynbos Biome endemics occur in Fynbos vegetation types. Although these animals play a major role in pollination and seed dispersal, they appear to play a minor part in influencing vegetation structure and composition. This is partly due to the high carbon to nitrogen ratio, which effectively excludes browsing of all but the youngest leaves.

7.1.1.3. Terrestrial pattern features

- (i) Hessequa used to have a large proportion of Renosterveld, which is now mostly lost to agriculture.
- (ii) The threatened Renosterveld vegetation supports a unique invertebrate fauna with high levels of endemism, e.g. certain genera in the order Hemiptera (bugs). Quite a number of rare and endemic butterflies also occur here, and are mostly linked to the sand plain fynbos, the limestone fynbos and the coastal thicket communities.
- (iii) Because of the high winter rainfall in the area, unique vegetation types are supported, such as the Swellendam Afromontane Forests in the Grootvadersbosch (Boosmansbos) Wilderness Area and Grootvedersbosch Conservancy. These forests occur mostly as naturally fragmented patches along the southern regions of the Langeberg. The Hessequa also supports Suurbraak Grassy Fynbos in the southern foothills of the Langeberg (this vegetation type is endemic to the MS). Other vegetation types are almost endemic to the Hessequa, and these include





lowland sand plain and limestone fynbos types (Albertinia Sand Plain Fynbos and Canca Limestone Fynbos). These two vegetation types provide very important over-wintering habitat for all the pollinating nectarivores. A State or Provincial reserve needs to be established in the lowland area.

- (iv) The Renosterveld and Langeberg interface is a unique wet renosterveld / fynbos interface along the southern foothills of the Langeberg. This type of habitat does not occur in any of the other municipal areas. This area also coincides with a high income agricultural area.
- (v) The koppies in the Hessequa are a unique geological feature with high levels of endemism. Herpetofauna and butterflies must be important in these habitats too, but very little is known about them.
- (vi) Hessequa contains a unique coastal thicket corridor (e.g. Milkwood).
- (vii) The marine environment contains African black oystercatcher breeding sites and oyster beds.
- (viii) The aloe industry is linked to the thicket types (*Aloe ferox* is very prominent in the thicket mosaic units).
- (ix) The Hessequa also supports an important wasp and bee fauna. There is lower species diversity than in the Little Karoo, but there are some species found here that will not occur in the arid areas. Natural open areas abutting indigenous forests are important for foraging, and therefore plantations, which are often established adjacent to indigenous forests, threaten these wasp and bee species. Plantations are mostly completely devoid of wasp and bee breeding sites. As will be mentioned in the aquatic component of the Hessequa, a diversity of habitats is required for nesting purposes (ground nesting species require level areas along rivers and drainage systems, vertical bank nesters require vertical banks, and plant stem nesters require indigenous vegetation along river banks). Aloes are also important for wasps and bees.
- (x) The coastal strip supports yet another suite of wasp and bee species. Specific species occur on coastal dunes, and therefore their occurrence will be reduced with the increase in development or disturbance of the dunes. Specific insects are associated with dune pioneer plants, and beaches have a distinct suite of bees and wasps. Snail shells provide nesting sites on the dunes for some wasp species.
- (xi) Many archaeological sites are found in the Hessequa.
- (xii) The E-W corridor along the Langeberg must be maintained (for both fynbos processes and amphibian endemics).
- (xiii) The previously extensive Renosterveld vegetation types used to have natural fires as a disturbance regime. Fire maintained biodiversity in the Renosterveld, but now about 90% of the veld is ploughed and natural fires can no longer burn.

7.1.1.4.Threats, projects and partners

Threat 1: This is one of the most threatened of all the regions, owing to extensive agriculture, ribbon development along the coast, alien plant infestations, and some afforestation in the mountains.

Threat 2: The last remaining remnants of Renosterveld are being further threatened by continued ploughing and grazing. This is resulting in even more transformation and fragmentation of the Renosterveld.



Threat 3: Albertinia Sand Plain Fynbos and Canca Limestone Fynbos in the lowlands are both threatened and have very little protection status: Albertinia Sand Plain Fynbos is 37% transformed.

Threat 4: Land use practices in the koppie areas damage their unique flora and fauna

Threat 5: Hessequa is severely invaded with alien vegetation. Aquatic aliens are covered in Threat 1 of the aquatic component of Hessequa. However, aliens are also a problem in the terrestrial environment. The Langeberg needs a systematic alien eradication plan, starting with the water catchment area. The sand plain and limestone fynbos also need this as does the coastal plants.

Threat 6: The dekriet (thatch) industry alters the biodiversity pattern within the lowland fynbos vegetation types. Continued cutting and mechanical trampling of dekriet increases its density (which is desirable for the industry), but undesirable for the indigenous biodiversity (dekriet out competes the other species). In addition, the natural fire regimes have been altered (fires are now at too low frequencies, because the reeds burn, which is undesirable for the industry). However, a lack of fire prevents the rejuvenation of other species, some of which are endangered (e.g. *Leucospermum praecox* and *L. muiirii*).

Threat 7: There are many threats to the bees and wasps. Firewood collection has a negative effect on bee and wasp nesting. Alterations to river banks also affect their nesting, as does the development or disturbance of the dunes.

Threat 8: Tourism opportunities in the Hessequa are not properly developed or managed.

Threat 9: Existing protected area in the mountains are fragmented and this threatens the long-term continuity of broad ecological processes such as migration and dispersal.

Threat 10: The high level of transformation (of mainly the Renosterveld) does not allow for the required fire regimes. Many plant species, especially geophytes and legumes, require fire to rejuvenate.

7.1.2. Aquatic component

The Duiwenhoks, Goukou, Breede and Gouritz Rivers should be added to the planning domain in order to capture the very different coastal catchments (these do not have as big a shale influence). They also have a very quick response to rainfall, and they generally have a lower pH and a lower conductivity (salinity).

7.1.2.1. Aquatic features

- (i) Our coastal rivers in the Hessequa may well be linked a subterranean flow. The Duiwenhoks and Goukou Rivers are independent from the rest of the Gourits catchment, and require separate attention - their biodiversity is different, as is their flow regime. The upper reaches of the Goukou River contain wetlands characterized by a high density of palmiet (*Prionium serratum*) and other special plants (e.g. *Cyclopia* spp.), especially within the Grootvadersbosch (Broomvlei) Nature Reserve.





- (ii) Fresh water fountains draining into the sea are very important. Most of these occur between Gouritsmond and Reins Private Nature Reserve/Stilbaai, with a few more inland. Most of this area falls within private nature reserves and the proposed Ystervark Conservancy. The distribution of these fountains is related to limestone outcrops. Where the limestone ends and the sand plain begins, the fountains stop. Limestone channels the water and it drains out near the sea. Many endemic plants are associated with these fountains and fresh water wetlands. e.g. *Cliffortia longifolia* (a large shrub). They also contain fresh water crabs.
- (iii) The drainage from the Renosterveld down 'kloofies' (small gorges) is another threatened aquatic feature. These kloofies channel seasonal drainage off the adjacent Renosterveld vegetation. Many of the kloofies and drainage channels are relatively intact at present, and still contain indigenous vegetation (for example, in the area between Herbertsdale and Albertinia).
- (iv) The Langeberg Mountain Catchment area supplies water to the Goukou and Duiwenhoks Rivers, and to a small extent supplies water to the North and to the Gourits.

7.1.2.2. Threats

Threat 1: The main threat to the Duiwenhoks and Goukou Rivers is the rapid spread of alien vegetation (mainly *Acacia mearnsii*, *Acacia saligna* and *Sesbania punicea*) which shades the river, thereby reducing the sunlight available for the aquatic biodiversity (e.g. indigenous plants, invertebrates and fish). *Acacia mearnsii* also adds tannins to the water. In addition, aliens also extract water, but the main effect is the shading.

Threat 2: Water abstraction for agriculture.

Threat 3: Nutrient enrichment of the water from the runoff from farms.

Threat 4: In the floodplain, palmiet keeps the water clean by filtration. However, there is a problem with the palmiet burning regime, for example, it is burned too frequently (for cattle grazing), or, too infrequently, and is thus unable to simulate the natural disturbance regimes. These natural disturbances (caused by e.g. periodic fire or hippos) which are no longer operative, would have maintained flow channels in the reed beds.

Threat 5: The estuaries of the Duiwenhoks and Goukou Rivers – Refer to Poster Ecological State of Goukou and Duiwenhoks Rivers.

Threat 6: The natural drainage channels in Renosterveld are being threatened by the introduction of ostriches and small stock (e.g. goats) into old wheat lands. The animals are able to enter the drainage channels, from which wheat was excluded. The effect is that the natural vegetation is decimated, which in turn changes run off patterns - and erosion gullies result. The vegetation contains many highly threatened species.

Threat 7: Rural development and water abstraction for agricultural purposes within the coastal fountain areas needs to be stopped. The old Khoi fish traps were placed where the fresh water run off and enters the sea, so there is also a marine effect. The wetlands are also growing closed with alien weed species and other vegetation, because the natural disturbance regime is no longer operating (e.g. the clearing effect of grazers).



Threat 8: Parts of the Langeberg Mountain Catchment Area were never part of the initial water catchment area planning and the new laws (e.g. from Grootvadersbosch (Garcia) Nature Reserve eastwards). Consequently, systematic private water catchment plans were not developed in this area (unlike the other MCAs such as the Kammanassie and the Swartberg). As a result, there is now a lot of both private and state land within parts of the Langeberg MCA with no MCA structure, and the Water Catchment Act cannot be applied. There is no control on activities that have a negative impact on water runoff.

7.2. PRIORITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT ISSUES WITHIN HESSEQUA

7.2.1. Spatial Fragmentation:

This issue refers to the fact that the characteristic settlement pattern prevailing in most towns of Hessequa is one where, at an overall scale, the area is broken up between larger urban settlements such as Riversdale and Stilbaai, smaller towns (Heidelberg, Albertinia) and coastal villages (Witsand, Gouritsmond) and smaller, peri-urban and rural settlements (Slangrivier, Melkhoutfontein, Vermaaklikheid).

Within the towns and villages themselves, development has occurred in a spatially fragmented way (Riversdale, Heidelberg, Albertinia), often for reasons associated with the past ideology of Apartheid.

This fragmented pattern of spatial development is costly to service and maintain, and also imposes significant costs on the residents of the area, making access to services and socio-economic opportunities more difficult.

7.2.2. Rapid and Unmanaged Urbanisation

This issue refers to the fact that Hessequa has, over the last 2 to 5 years, experienced a rapid growth in lower socio-economic settlements within the built areas and, more especially, on the fringes of existing settlements such as Kwanokathula, Bitouville, Theronville, Melkhoutfontein, Joe Slovo Park.

7.2.3. Low Density Settlements/Urban Sprawl

This issue refers to the fact that development within the lower socio-economic settlements has been of a low density, with settlements comprising of large residential sites sprawling over wide areas and consuming valuable land resources.

Moreover, when associated with the fragmented spatial pattern of development noted above, the phenomenon of settlement sprawl imposes additional costs in the provision of effective services, and reduces the likelihood of such services being rendered in a way that is affordable both to the provider (usually the Hessequa Municipality) and the consumer.

7.2.4. Uncoordinated Spatial Development





Here the issue is related to the fact that many decisions that result in spatial development or have an impact on existing development are taken by a range of different authorities, often without consulting each other.

This results in developments that are not planned in an integrated manner and gives rise to problems, ranging from environmental impacts that are unacceptable, to developments that are not serviceable within a short period of time.

7.2.5. Depletion of Natural Resources and Valuable Agricultural Land

Finally, this issue is related to the first two issues describing a fragmented and sprawling built environment. The consequences of such an approach to spatial development have included negative impacts on sensitive natural systems and the erosion of valuable agricultural land in Hessequa.

Given the profile of the local economy, two of its most valuable resources are the unspoilt beauty of the natural environment and the potential for agricultural development in the area.

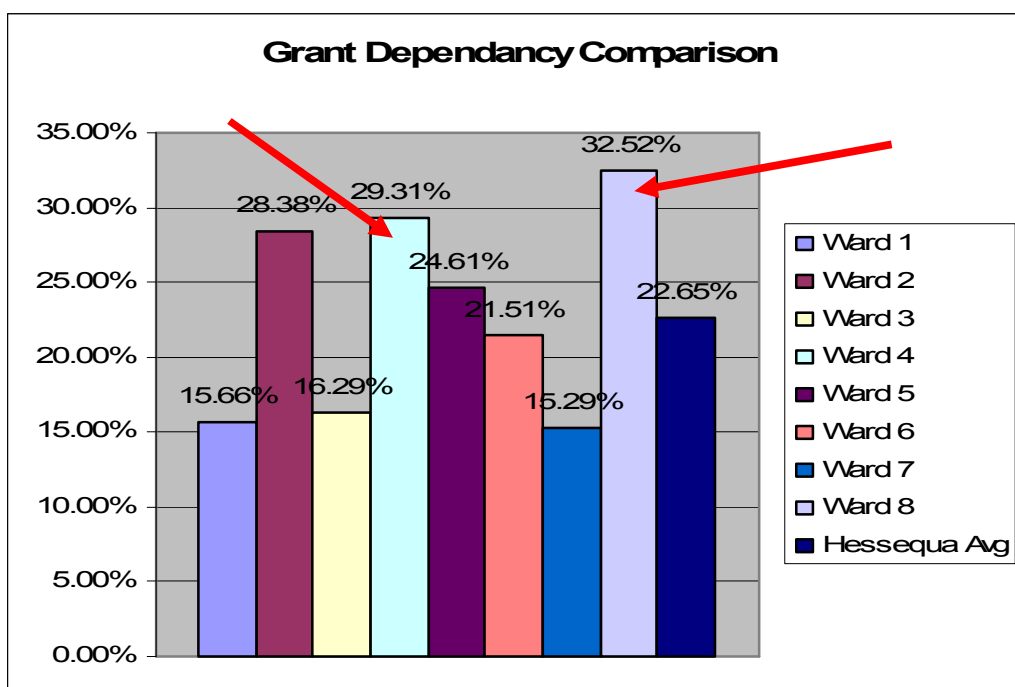


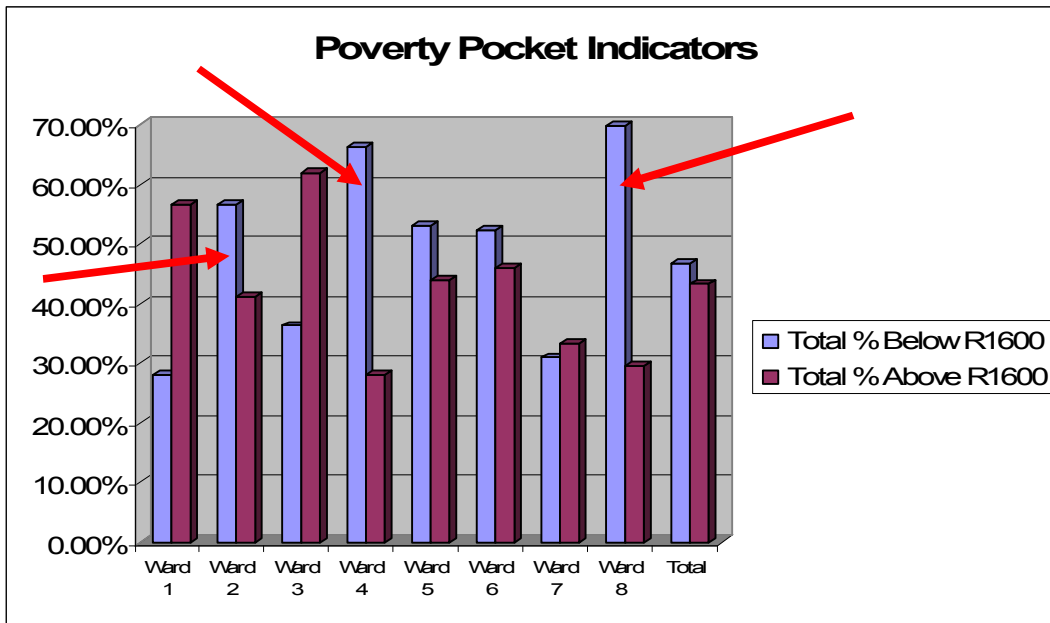
CHAPTER 8: WARD BASED ANALYSIS

8.1. Well-being of Hessequa's Wards

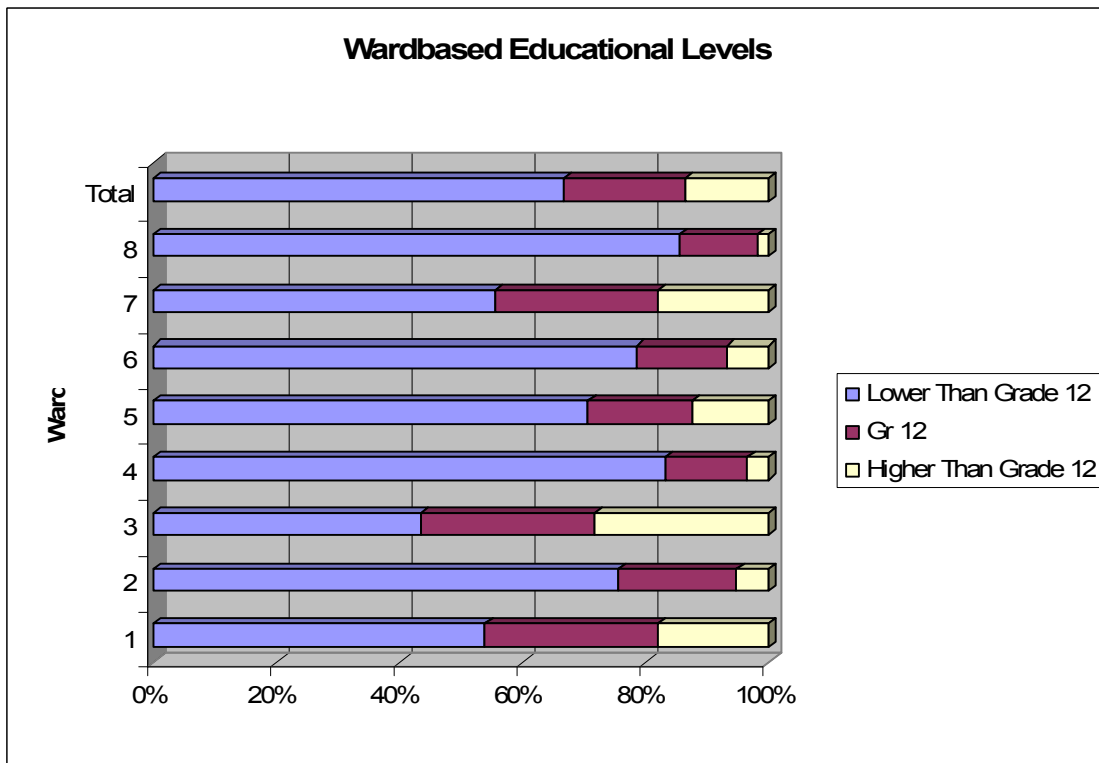
As the statistics will show there is no doubt that Hessequa is reflecting the exact same picture as the rest of South Africa with regards to the social need and the huge amount of people who are separated from the first economy, and living in "dire straights" without hope of getting somewhere, someday.

The following chart indicates clearly the difference in well-being with regards to income per month. Following this is an indication of how dependant each ward is on social grants. Once again, staggering statistics.





The picture is being blackened even more by the shocking truth of how many people over the age of 18 have actually matriculated. This chart clearly displays the reality concerning the level from which people need to market themselves in the economy of Hessequa. This reveals the shocking truth that our labourforce is uneducated.





8.2 DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES

8.2.1 WARD COMMITTEE 1:

ORIGINAL INPUT

1. HOUSING

Especially for the lower-income groups in towns where the cost of property is increasing enormously.

Vulnerable groups, especially the elderly, are encountering problems.

The fact that they own a property, does not exclude them from the effect of inflation, the increase in rates, taxes and services has on their income.

The huge amount of elderly in the area (especially Stilbaai and Jongensfontein) places a huge amount of pressure on the establishments which have to supply services in care of the elderly who require frail care. The facilities available for the intake and care of the elderly and elderly requiring frail care in this area, is limited and home-based care is an expensive option.

Housing for employed young adults who do not earn high salaries, is another problem because of scarcity and it being too expensive. Young families experience the same problems with housing. Cheaper housing along our coastal towns is necessary. With the care of the elderly, work is created for care givers, as well as for gardeners and domestic workers.

The establishment of a **training centre** in this area is important.

Distance is often a problem and can be overcome by a training centre in the Hessequa region

2. AVAILABILITY OF BASIC SERVICES AND INFRASTRUCTURE

The above remains an inherent problem, where the enormous influx of tourists during the holiday season, causes huge pressure on the infrastructure, resulting in inconvenience and shortage.

3. SOCIAL PROBLEMS

Social problems like alcohol and drug abuse, are very real issues in the community.

Most of the social problems of violence against women and children, neglect of children and vulnerable members of the community, are a consequence of this problem. The Hessequa region could perhaps commence with an awareness and support Programme.

4. DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM

The integrated development in the Hessequa area is necessary, but it is also necessary to develop the products in Melkhoutfontein.

Stilbaai and Melkhoutfontein have wonderful treasures of products which could be offered to tourists as an integrated package.

A great cause of concern is the country areas far from towns and where services are difficult to acquire.

4.1 Gouritsmond and Bitouville





- Housing project (Builders; camp) accelerated and expedited.
- Includes public-transport issues in the Integrated Transport plan of Hessequa.
- A Multi-purpose service centre, including a nursery school.
- Renovation of tidal pool; especially the floor and valves.
- Play park for children in Gouritzmond and in Bitouville.
- Extension and tarring of Seesigweg to the parking area.
- Replace speedhump in Seesigweg with a fourway stop street at the crossing of Steenbasstraat.
- Maintenance and tarring of streets.
- Establishing a wooden walkway over the salt marsh which is in danger of being destroyed.
- Retirement village.
- Youth sport and recreation.
- Environmental conservation: pristine and unspoilt nature.
- Financial circumstances of pensioners and the ability to pay property tax.

RURAL

- Maintenance of roads
- Tar Hectorskraal road
- Water and sanitation for labourers' homes
- Development of small-scale farmers
- Added value to agricultural products.
- New niche products
- Making use of natural assets.

4.2 MELKHOUTFONTEIN

HOUSING

Priority;

Acceleration of the process of identifying land for housing.

That a procedure of transferring home ownership to the currently rented municipal houses be followed. Reviewing of house rentals of the municipal houses, which is currently too high.

Informal settlement requires urgent attention.

5. ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

Priority:

- A survey of unutilized buildings must be done. The possibility of establishing a one-stop business centre for entrepreneurial development must be investigated.
- The above must also be taken into account by the IDP.
- Sustainable job creation – use of the local labourers, especially for temporary job-creation projects.
- Light industries for the creation of jobs.

6. ESTABLISHMENT OF SOCIAL INFRASTRUCTURE





6.1. Development of sport

Priority:

- Establishment of sport facilities for various sport codes.
- Establishment of a sports academy.

6.2. Youth Development

Priority:

- Establishment of recreational facilities for the youth.
- Upgrading and repair of play parks for children.

6.3. Recreational facilities

- Provision of public "braai" facilities
- Provision of "braai" facilities at the community centre
- Improving the lighting in front of the community centre with more powerful lights.
- Creation of additional facilities for the elderly.

6.4. Erection of a Day Hospital

6.5. Building of a waiting room at the Clinic

7. SERVICE DELIVERY/INFRASTRUCTURE

7.1. Sewerage

Priority

- Need for dialogue with Council in respect of the sewerage of
- Die Poort and Church ground
- Infrastructure services: Church ground.
- More regular maintenance to the storm water drainage

7.2. Street lighting

Priority

- Improvement of street lighting of Die Poort.
- Tarring of the road between Melkhoutfontein and Gourtizmond.
- Construction of pavements where necessary.
- Erection of bus shelters for the protection against the weather for school children.
- Improvement of the refuse-removal services.
- Investigate the possibility of temporary electricity supply for informal area (settlement)
- Establishment of a High School within Melkhoutfontein
- Taxi Rank
- Treatment of sewage

8. EDUCATION

Establishment of a training facility, eg. Satellite campus for skills training.





8.1. IDP

- Identification of land for the establishment of industries, especially the traditional fishing industry.
- Declaration of Melkhoutfontein as a an inland town.
- Effective and broader marketing of what the that the town has to offer.
- A process which would help people to take personal responsibility for the neatness of the town.
- Small-scale farmers:
- Acceleration and conclusion of the transferring of property to the smal- scalel farmers
- Added value: Development/marketing of the locally-produced products

MARCH 2007 INPUTS

STILBAAI

- * Maintenance and retarring of roads
- * Provision for adequate and efficient basic infrastructure
- * Desalination of sea water
- * Maintenance of basic infrastructure
- * Promoting eco-tourism
- * Environmental conservation: pristine and untouched nature
- * Use of natural resources
- * Use of wave- sun- and wind-power
- * Retirement villages: economic and sub-economic
- * Medical Centre/Clinic
- * Functional and modern business node and business centre
- * High School: Stilbaai and Melkhoutfontein
- * Youth sport and recreation
- * Storm water drainage

Kerbing and pavements

- * By-pass road to Jongensfontein
- * Traffic calming (speed humps)
- * Traffic at bridge – three lanes?
- * Traffic congestion at crossing of Hoofweg-west- and Buitekant Street
- * Traffic congestion at crossing of Hoofweg-west- and Orchid Drive
- * Environmental conservation: pristine and untouched nature
- * Financial circumstances of pensioners and their ability to pay property rates and taxes.





- * Cemetery and wall of remembrance

GOURITSMOND AND BITOUVILLE

- * Housing project accelerated
- * Public transportation matters
- * Multi-purpose service centre in Bitouville; including a nursery school
- * Transport service to Albetinia and Mossel Bay
- * Renovation of tidal pool
- * Play park for children
- * Extending and tarring of Seesigweg
- * Replace speed hump in Seesigweg
- * Maintenance and retarring of streets
- * Construction of wooden walkway over the salt marsh
- * Retirement village and clinic
- * Youth sport and recreation
- * Camping and “braai” facilities at public places: renovation and extension
- * Voëlklip – camping - recreation, “braai- and ablution facilities
- * Promoting eco-tourism
- * Environmental conservation: pristine and unspoilt nature
- * Financial circumstances of pensioners and the ability to pay property rates and taxes.
- * Recreational area at the tidal pool

MELKHOUTFONTEIN

- * Expedite and accelerate housing Programme
- * Provision and maintenance of basic infrastructure services.
- * Storm water drainage in informal settlement
- * Street lighting

Lighting informal settlement

- * Kerbing
- * Beautifying of pavements
- * Taxi rank
- * Youth sport and recreation
- * Refuse removal





- * Waste disposal
- * Maintenance of streets
- * Infrastructure services at De Poort
- * Infrastructure services at Church Grounds
- * Tourism: tarring of sand road to Gouriqua
- * Promoting of eco-tourism
- * Light industries for sustainable work creation

RURAL

- * Maintenance of roads
- * Upgrade/tar Hectorskraal road
- * Water and sanitation: workers' homes
- * Development of small-scale farmers: transferring of property
- * Value adding to agricultural products
- * New niche products
- * Utilisation of natural assets
- * Electrification of Driefontein and surrounds

8.2.2 WARD COMMITTEE 2: DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES

ORIGINAL INPUT

- Business properties.
- Multi-purpose centre.
- Training of people.
- Play park for children.
- Financial assistance to entrepreneurs.
- Better and more office facilities in Theronville.
- Affordable housing with the necessary infrastructure.
- Street and storm water facilities.
- Renovation of streets and pavements
- Proper dog pound for stray animals.
- Church grounds
- A better building for the nursery school.
- Attention must be paid to the neatness of streets. The community must be encouraged not to litter.
- Sport grounds not up to standard and attention must be given to the roof of the rugby field's pavilion.
- Greater urgency is required with the connection of the houses to the sanitation system of the eastern side of town
- Rainbow Village: houses have been built below the ground-water level which resulted in houses often standing in water and seepage furrows which





will work effectively, must be installed. Library to be upgraded with a bigger and better selection of books. Computer and internet access and a better loan system to be implemented

- Proper planning is necessary for the supply of water, not only for the present development, but also for future development. Results of a survey currently in progress, must be made public.
- Law enforcement must be implemented in a more consequential manner to ensure that shebeens are not open 24 hours.
- Water in Blesbok Street is running through houses and the installing of pavements could help solve the problem.
- Small-scale farmers do not have water, to be used for farming on the Common ground.
- Great risk should the filter dam break – must be addressed pro-actively. even though piece of land on the other side of the old mine is private land.
- Furrows for seepage must be installed, as it is a risk to existing houses.
- Pig farm too near to dwellings, must be urgently addressed.

MARCH 2007 INPUT

Electricity

- * Christmas lights/Hoof Street and Vries Street
- * Dark spots/street lights

Water

- * Storage dam
- * Weyersriverdam
- * Storm water and kerbing at Rainbow-village

Streets

- * Paving of all gravel roads in area
- * Play parks in existing residential areas as well as in future developments

Sport

- * Netball courts
- * Cricket field
- * Soccer field
- * Pavilion

Housing

- * Adding of toilets
- * Establishment of a transit camp

Buildings

- * Transforming the community centre into a multi-purpose centre





- * Transforming the Mossgas building into skills development centres.
- * Extending of ablution block in SSK

8.2.3. WARD COMMITTEE 3: DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES

ORIGINAL INPUT

Delivery of services/infrastructure

According to the residents of Vermaaklikheid, the sewerage system is apparently inadequate and unsuitable to the area. – toilets at the subsidy houses must be investigated. Sewerage in Stilbaai must be attended to. Is being upgraded but the drainage pipes are now apparently too small. Development is being allowed with the excuse that all coastal towns have a service delivery problem during November/December/January. Also those who own holiday homes. Urgent attention must be given to water services.

Public transport

- Is inadequate, especially between Riversdal and Vermaaklikheid.
- State of the road and streets. Speed humps requested but not built.
- There is no kerbing in Vermaaklikheid.
- Bypass road from Vermaaklikheid to Gourits. Holiday traffic disrupts everyone.
- Stilbaai residents have been begging for two years for a solution at the Fynbos shopping centre.
- Traffic across the bridge becomes impossible during holiday times.

Tourism

- Coastal towns are identified as tourism-development areas.
- At Vermaaklikheid holiday homes are built along the river.
- Very few tourism attractions in Vermaaklikheid.
- Residents are asking for an integrated approach to tourism which would be of benefit to the whole region.
- Clean-air areas are promoted overseas. Eco-tourism. Crime has to be combated in order to make the area more attractive to visitors.
- Legislation and law enforcement is necessary.
- Coastal towns eg. Stilbaai has been identified as towns for retired persons.
- Approximately 15 % of the regions income comes from retired persons. The economy around retired persons should be investigated and service delivery to such people be put into place.
- Recreational facilities like walkways for slower-moving people must be investigated.
- Safer paths for cyclists, wheel chairs and smaller vehicles ought to be put in place.
- Crime prevention to make the area safer.

Subsidized housing: Affordable for all vulnerable groups and security housing for those who can afford this, should be investigated throughout Hessequa





Care of frail elderly should be regarded as a priority.

Job creation for people who are involved eg with care-giving services and nursing could be tackled successfully. Build an industry around the concept of retired persons. Such a strategy around retired persons could also benefit the problem of job seekers and tourists in the so-called “off” months like, June, July and August and could also promote tourism in the region. Innovative thinking is necessary

Traffic calming: Attention to the installation of speed humps in area where traffic moves at high speeds which endanger pedestrians. Emphasis on Hoofwegwes.

Sewerage: Jongensfontein Phase 3 must be resumed in order to phase out the whole pit and bucket system.

Historical buildings: Policy must be formulated and applied with regard to the protection of historical buildings and “Places of exceptional beauty”.

Neatness: General neatness and “image” of the area must be protected. Burnt-down structures must be removed.

MARCH 2007 INPUT

* Extending Jongensfontein road
* Tarring along Palinggat-resort

8.3.4 WARD COMMITTEE 4 : DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES

ORIGINAL INPUT

- Tarring of roads through Slang River to R322 and Malgas to encourage tourism.
- Keep municipal taxes as low as possible for job creation on farms.
- Job creation by eg. Boat trips from Witsand to Malgas, whale-walking tours and hiking routes along the Slang River
- Upgrading of municipal building where Hoonkers is currently housed.
- Development of the area between mountain, sea, Breede and Duivenhoks
- Rivers as a result of tourism potential.
- Creating of whale-hiking route between Witsand and Puntjie.
- Local ambulance service and own nurses.
- More job creation projects, eg. Needlework and gardening.
- Building of low-water bridges at
 - a. Kleinhans Street out to Vleidam Road
 - b. To Klipkrans
 - c. To Bokkiekraal
- Upgrading of street lights in Bo-kraal, Kloof, Bokkieskraal and Klipkrans.
- Provision of low-cost housing of a higher quality than previous projects.
- Making available affordable erven.
- Improvement of street and storm water in the whole Slang River.
- Creation of more tourism infrastructure and utilisation of existing potential.





- Promotion of entrepreneurship and SMME's through the utilisation of existing material
- Faulty street lights must be replaced.
- Replacing of broken water meters.
- Establishing tourism and information centre.
- Establishing tourism forums.
- Establishing of sustainable job-creation projects.
- Development of agricultural projects in Slang River (Eg. Utilisation of underground water.
- Improvement of bad service at Clinic at Slang River.
- Ambulances too far from Slang River
- Development of amenities for the youth and senior citizens.
- The raising of literacy levels through ABET training.
- Improvement of service delivery of the SAP.
- Improvement of poor electricity supply.
- Rezoning of erven in residential areas to business.
- Erection of sport and recreational facilities.
- Recreation activities for farm workers after hours.
- Reaction time to disasters eg. Floods and fires very slow.
- Making available erven for development of industrial area.
- Upgrading of water-supply piping network.
- Increasing refuse removal services.
- Shebeens must have time to close.
- Regulating of places of entertainment with shebeens.
- No equality in education yet – not integrated.
- Day hospital should be open 24 hours en medical personnel must be available
 - during weekends.
- Service centres for the elderly.
- Public service, especially for farm workers and the community of Slang River.

MARCH 2007 INPUT

Slangrivier: Agriculture	: Cattle-drinking water pipes
	: water troughs
	: repair of enclosures – border fences
Sewerage:	: Infrastructure for Bo-kraal, De Kloof and Riverside
	: building of oxidation dam
Sanitation	: Fencing of refuse dump
Projects from donations	: Toilets for Bokraal, De Kloof, Riverside and Extention 2.
Streets	: Tarring of streets
	: Storm water and kerbing
	: Re-gravelling of streets





Joe Slovo	: Tarring of streets
	: Paving of pavements

1. Witsand – (a) Refuse-transfer station
(b) Clinic
(c) Development of beach area
(d) Making available

8.2.5. WARD COMMITTEE 5: DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES

ORIGINAL INPUT

Beautification of entrances and green public spaces and the installation of pavements where none exist.

- Assistance and financial support to entrepreneurs. Skills must be extended and incentives for the creation of businesses must be encouraged.
- Areas where entrepreneurs can trade.
- Transform the Community Centre into a multi-purpose centre.
- Business allotments – Heidelberg Mall or more shops which can stock a greater variety of products in demand.
- Caravan Park with chalets.
- Cemetery/wall of remembrance. Installation of toilets.
- Church allotments.
- Socio-development projects.
- Housing – low cost and middle income. Investigation/survey is necessary regarding the houses which are currently not utilized and which are vacant can't these be purchased and rented out? Half-built houses must be completed and be made available.
- A light-industrial area must be created.
- Land for small-scale farmers.
- Addition of toilets at old municipal scheme houses for women and the elderly.
- Tarring of streets: Burn Street, Kerk Street, Adam Street, Theo Adam Street, Van Niekerk Street, Fisher Street, Michael Street, McNolsing Street. Emphasis is placed on the road to the cemetery. Joe Slovo Park's Steets are generally in a poor condition.
- Dirty streets must be addressed as a great priority. General neatness of town must continually addressed.
- Sport development: soccer and cricket fields are needed, together with facilities for other sport codes.
- Ablution facilities are needed.
- Better and more powerful street lights with emphasis on lighting of the N2 which currently holds a security risk for pedestrians, but also negatively impacts on motorists stopping in the town. Provincial Government must be actively involved and must accept joint responsibility.
- Soup kitchen.



- Youth development must be given more attention and opportunities must be created for recreation. A facility which the youth can use for a variety of activities is necessary.
- Property development must be linked to a Heritage Committee and the reconstruction of old houses and memorabilia.
- Sewerage in the old town is currently being addressed but is not considered to be adequate. Greater endeavour must be made with this.
- Existing sewerage works must be moved.
- Emergency services inadequate or non-existent – eg. Fire station
- Opportunities created by tourism must be utilized to a greater extent.
- Heidelberg should be marketed as the gateway to Eden
- In any future planning the implications of the flow of the river for the bridge, caravan park and other facilities, must be taken into account.
- Cultural projects must be given more attention.

MARCH 2007 INPUT

Input by Cllr A Hartnick

- * The creation of an infrastructure must be created together with a strong social education task.
- * Information about the working of a local government must be communicated to the residents in a robust manner.
- * Residents of the previously disadvantaged communities must know that they can communicate with the Council in various ways without being discriminated against.

Heidelberg

- * All the streets are tarred.
- * New housing projects have been completed.
- * Bathrooms/toilets in all the old sub-economic houses.
- * All houses in Joe Slovo park completed and occupied.
- * Small business node east of the N2
- * Multi-purpose centre which provides space to organisations and individuals to present activities.
- * New cemetery with wall of remembrance.
- * Vibrant tourism projects
- * No unemployment.
- * Flourishing small businesses and entrepreneurs
- * Fewer people dependent on social grants.
- * Safe playing area for our children.
- * Offices/spaces which can be rented by residents for business and other activities.
- * Developed green areas which will make the residential areas more attractive.



- * A happy, satisfied and proud community where the spirit of “ubuntu” prevails.
- * Good schools where children will be educated in totality.
- * Positive youth who will use every opportunity to study and to learn skills.
- * An annual Hessequa-Khoi Culture Festival which will be held to give the town an economic injection.
- * An intimate state of the art theatre.
- * A sport centre.
- * An active and involved community who give input around the improvement of the ward.
- * Innovative individuals/groups who will invest in the town’s progress.
- * Road signs indicating the various residential areas
- * A shuttle service.
- * Upgrading of Duivenhoks resort.
- * Tourism projects which unite different towns.
- * Development of culture.
- * Active Chamber of Commerce
- * Attractive town entrance.
- * Clean residential area.
- * Old Diepkloof farm buildings – renovate or demolish.
- * Develop erven for housing.
- * Develop area where the old sewerage dams were.
- * Move present sewerage system.
- * Sewerage installation in the rest of the town.
- * Install ramps for disabled persons.
- * Facilities for disabled.
- * Hawking cubicles on the small market and the installation of steel gates to protect the cubicles.
- * Close open storm water furrow next to the New Apostolic church.
- * Irrigation canals upgraded.
- * Visible water problem in Helm Street.
- * Transformation of Duivenhoks community centre into a multi-purpose centre.
- * Play park in Geldenhuys Road upgraded
- * Protection for the elderly.
- * United community.



- * Empowered women and youth.
- * HIV/AIDS sensitive community.
- * Drug-free community.
- * Active-ward committees.
- * A clinic.
- * Officials of Hessequa's first priority – service delivery.
- * Housing projects.
- * Free basic services for every person.
- * People who qualify – receive compassionate help
- * Better Christmas lights.

Projects which can lead to a united Hessequa:

- * Activities on important public holidays which will unite residents.
- * Hessequa Khoi Festival – eg. a cultural festival at Heidelberg, a sport festival at Riversdal, Musical festival at Albertinia, food fare at Melkhoutfontein, Funfare at Slangriver.
- * Cleanest town competition.
- * Christmas lights competition.
- * Street festivals during December holiday with the switching on of the Christmas lights.

Input by Mr R.M. Jacobs (Heidelberg resident)

Business projects: : Small business enterprise – business skills – job creation

- : An Abattoir
- : Good electricity-supply store for electricians
- : A butchery
- : A bakery

Recreation Projects : No recreational facilities – good youth centre

- : Tour operators
- : Entertainment activities/businesses
- : Amusement park

Social Projects : Youth workers

- : Fundraisers
- : Event planners
- : Fitness Centre/Gym





- * Housing projects must be accelerated.
- * Waiting lists to be updated.
- * Density housing – neat apartment blocks.
- * Bulk services
- * Implementing of the new housing plan.
- * Historical lists should be consulted in the allocation of housing.
- * UISP - Was it only Kwanakuthula which qualified?
- * Blikkiesdorp – possible project.

8.2.6. WARD COMMITTEE 6: DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES

ORIGINAL INPUT

URBAN AREA

1. Social development

Priority

- Development of youth facilities
- Erection of recreational facilities.
- Recreation/relaxation area at existing library in Riebeeck Street.
- Effective supervision of parks.
- Fencing of play park with a supervisor.
- Site for use of playgroup in Ward
- Neatness of community must enjoy continuous attention and activities which could constitute a health hazard, must be controlled.
- Safe accommodation for street children, homeless and abused children.

2. Infrastructure/Service delivery

Priority

- Repair and tarring of streets in Progress Estate/Riverville, Gemera; more powerful street lighting.
- Speed humps must be installed in streets.

Priority

- Maintenance of storm water drainage, especially the replacing of manhole covers (danger)
- Making safe of storm-water pipes

Priority

- Stronger control over stray animals, especially stray dogs.

Priority

- Demarcation of waste-disposal sites.
- Safety to pedestrians at the train crossing (instead of concrete pavers at the pedestrian crossing section.)





RURAL AREA [KRUISRIVIER EN PALMIET]

1. Health/Infrastructure/Service delivery

Priority

Water supply

- Ensure supply of clean drinking water eg. installation of water tanks.

Sanitation

- Upgrading and provision of sanitation.

Priority

- Supply of public telephones
- Supply of public transport .
- Transportation of patients to and from clinic at Riversdal.
- Clinic bus must move closer to communities, especially to the elderly.
- Improvement of ambulance service (especially reaction time) to rural areas.
- Upgrading of rural roads
- Electricity supply.

2. Farm employee Housing

Priority

That process is followed to ensure home ownership *either* on farm *or* in town.

- Repair of existing employee housing.
- Revision/reduction of rentals which employees are currently paying.
- Making safe existing houses.

3. Social

Priority

- Erection of Youth/Community Centre
- Implementation of sport facilities for different sport codes.
- Building of a nursery school and play park.

4. Environment

- Beautification of certain areas eg. Wild Monster plants to be cut down.

5. Security

- Combating crime

LED Priorities

RIVERSDAL TOWN

- More exposure of the R20 000 projects from the Municipality, especially to unemployed persons to encourage them to start small businesses.





- Small-scale farmer development
- The making available of more land for small-scale farmers to ensure that cattle farming and the growing of products like vegetables, especially at Riverville.
- More and better support from the Department of Agriculture to small-scale farmers.
- Establishing of secondary sectors in the community – more support to the small retailers which can lead to the strengthening of the first economy within the community.
- Erection of a bigger shopping centre within the Hessequa region to promote job creation.
- Development of tourism with a strong focus on the unique aspects of the region to attract tourists.
- Establish a tertiary institution.

RURAL AREA [KRUISRIVIER EN PALMIET]

- Interaction with the commercial sector to support the promotion of entrepreneurship of the rural communities.
- Establishment of home industries
- Needlework projects
- Spaza shops
- Centre for businesses under one roof.
- Promotion and encouragement of the small-scale farmer activities.
- Encouragement of the establishment of vegetable gardens.

MARCH 2007 INPUT

- * Tarring or paving of streets in Madiba City
- * Installation of sidewalk kerbing in Madiba City
- * Speed humps
- * Upgrading of sewerage system in Ward
- * Installation of “kasduikers” in the canal
- * Upgrading of pavements
- * Installation of pre-paid meters
- * Upgrading of the De Mist swimming pool
- * Upgrading of the storm water system
- * Installation of cement benches at the swimming pool
- * Implementation of a play park
- * Opening of railway crossing
- * Budget for 15 Masakhane workers
- * Recreational area in place at the swimming pool
- * Community hall in rural area.





SECTION C: LONG TERM STRATEGIC FOCUS

CHAPTER 10: PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PROCESS

As the sphere of government closest to the people, local government has been tasked with facilitating the process of “bringing people back in.” As the Municipality we are legally obliged to ensure the participation of Communities and organisations in the formulation of the Municipality Budget plans which is largely done through the establishment of the Integrated Development Plans.

It cannot be disputed that our recent IDP review process generated the most public participation in the history of municipal planning of the Hessequa Municipality. The people of Hessequa have spoken, to gather we need to create and build a Hessequa vision.

We as Hessequa Municipality are committed to give sustainable ways to meet the needs of our community and improve the quality of lives by facilitation of Government Services through the engagement in partnership with Local Committees within the boundaries of Hessequa Municipality.

We can do this by engaging in good governance through institutional transformation, intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation to ensure accountability, developing and appropriate local economy that ensure growth, prosperity and sustainability, create and enabling local environment that ensures safe, healthy and vibrant communities that participate actively in Hessequa ensuring effective and affordable service on social delivery, to meet the needs of the people, developing human & Social capital by investing in women and youth development and as of Hessequa, a people entered planning . By us taking this approach, we are of many challenges and procures that confront as government and a community.

Community participation was very positive as a result of ward systems, which had a very structured process of community participation including the ground breaking work of CDW's and their inputs in the whole process.

These positive results of Community participation must be acknowledge for the efforts ordinary, volunteers and the CDW's in the communities have put in to make this round of IDP consultation the best for the communities.

A difference approached under the leadership of the Deputy Municipal Manager, Mr CV Schroeder since January 2007 was introduced where a number of Summits with specific sectorial organisations were held to engage role players with common interest. This created a lot of interest and amongst the total spectrum through the whole community. The outcomes of this approach were that these different summits and meetings took place

1. Social Development Meeting – 5 March 2007
2. HIV & AIDS Summit – 24 March 2007





3. Youth Development Summit – 31 March 2007
4. Social Development Summit – 2 April 2007
5. Bosberaad for Councillors- 26-28 March 2007

This will all be explored later in the documents.

MUNICIPAL IMBIZO'S

The IDP Imbizo's of April 2007 have differed a lot from our previous municipal IDP Imbizo. This we can gladly say if we look at the attendance of the meetings in past IDP's. Methods that was used to inform our communities about our IDP meetings was as follows.

Pamphlets were distributed by young people who are unemployed. This has played a major role in our communities in terms of communication.

Loud hailing took place in the communities

Advertisement in the local newspapers

Advertisement in our municipal newsletters

Information were spread through organisations

This was a true people centred IDP participation process where people felt free to actively participate in this important issue. In Riversdale people were bussed in from ward 6, 7 and 8 (Kwanokuthula) as this is a very vast area and it is very difficult for people to get to the place of the meetings. The meetings of the IDP inputs during the month of April were scheduled and took place as followed:

16 April 2007 Riversdale	19H00
17 April 2007 Heidelberg	19H00
18 April 2007 Vermaaklikheid	19H00
19 April 2007 Slangrivier	19H00
23 April 2007 Gouritsmond	16H00
23 April 2007 Albertinia	19H00
24 April 2007 Stilbaai	17H00
24 April 2007 Melkhoutfontein	19H00

As the municipality we believe that this effort was the effort of all members of the community the official that worked so hard on this IDP and the councillors for there support at the meetings that was always present.

A key focus: integrating community based planning techniques into our IDP processes

•Through leadership role played by Ward Councilor and active involvement of CDW and ward committee





- *Ensure that each ward has sustainable and viable projects based on concrete developmental needs*
- *Progression towards ward based budgeting*

Optimizing the workings of our ward committees?

- *Utilizing the results of the socio-economic survey to inform and strengthened the community needs analysis*
- *Enforce and mainstream sector participation and representation of vulnerable groupings*

CHAPTER 11: ECONOMY

Strategic approach

11.1 Economic vision

A cooperative community where everyone may reap the fruit of a growing economy through sustainable development and utilization of our human potential and our natural resources

11.2 Guiding principles

Hessequa understands that “communities that cooperate go forward, those that do not, stagnate”. Successful economic restructuring, therefore, requires:

- Trust among all the groups and people of Hessequa,
- Strong leadership at all levels of society,
- Participation by everyone willing to become part of the effort, and
- Effective communications throughout.

Hessequa understands that today’s problems must be addressed without jeopardizing the futures of tomorrow’s generations. We are taking the lead, as our ancestors did, to create a prosperous society in harmony with nature.

11.3 Broad economic goals

The following broad economic goals will be pursued in Hessequa:

- Poverty eradication,
- Protection of natural capital,
- Reduction of income disparities,
- Retaining wealth within the local area, and
- Promoting economic diversity and resilience.

11.4 Strategic initiatives

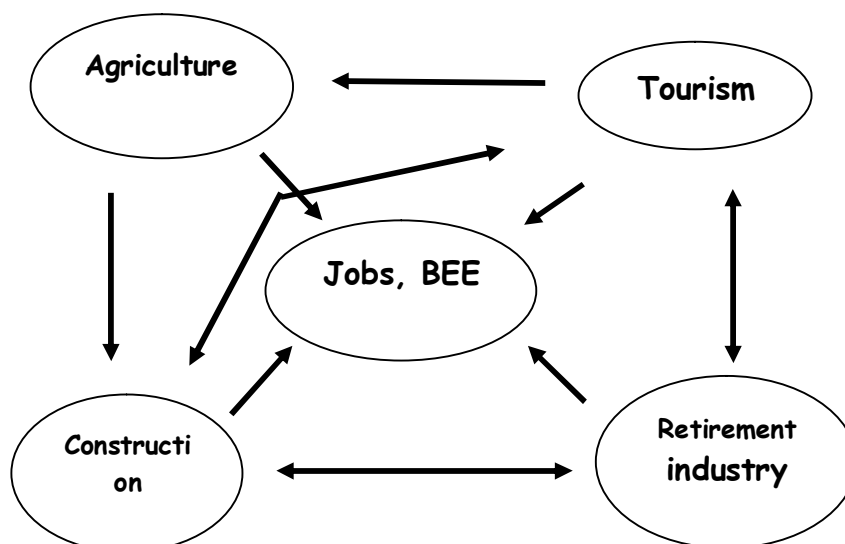
To achieve Hessequa’s economic goals a number of strategic initiatives have been selected. To stabilize and grow the economy four sectors will be focused on. The skewness in the economy will be addressed, some keystone projects will be pursued and green technologies will be investigated. Poverty eradication strategies will be developed and business support services will be used to help operators in the informal economy to migrate to the formal economy. Skills development and service delivery will receive attention:





- Grow/stabilize specific economic sectors:
 - Agriculture because of:
 - its enduring importance to the local economy,
 - challenge to meet land ownership target, and
 - its BBBEE challenge.
 - Tourism because of:
 - its growing economic importance,
 - its expansion potential, and,
 - its BBBEE potential
 - Construction because of:
 - growth over the past decade,
 - low-skilled job opportunities,
 - its BBBEE potential
 - Retirement industry because of:
 - the need for more investment to drive the construction industry,
 - pensions increase expendable money in the community, and
 - the increase in demand for domestic workers.
- Identification and implementation of keystone projects,
- Development of human resources,
- Provision of a system of business support,
- Development of poverty eradication strategies,
- Improvement of the regulatory environment and service delivery,
- Investigation of the potential of green and sustainable technologies, e.g. wind power, and
- Use of partnerships to overcome limitations of being a small rural local authority.

The inter-relationships between the selected sectors and issues are shown below:



11.5 Critical economic issues

A number of critical economic issues were identified that need rapid responses:

- the capacity of Hessequa municipality to drive the LED process,
- the development of assets,
- the development of strategies, management plans for sectoral charters



- the development of required infrastructure, and
- the completion of the land reform process.

CHAPTER 12: INFRASTRUCTURE

During the last decade major changes have taken place in the global environment as well as in local government. The rapid growth in population and its concentration in cities and towns around the world are affecting humanity's long-term outlook. Unemployment, environmental degradation, lack and/or deterioration of infrastructure and lack of finance are among some of the main concerns in local authorities today. South Africa has not escaped this global trend. Despite local government's best effort to provide basic services, a lack of funding, skills and resources continues to deny most of South Africa's cities and towns of necessary infrastructure. Unfortunately this state of affairs pushes communities into desperate conditions and causes a cycle of perpetual poverty.

To ensure that the infrastructure in the Hessequa municipal area will be able to cope with future infrastructure demand, it is imperative to have the correct intergraded infrastructure development. IDP's usually constitute a fairly "high-level" planning and framework for the total municipal area. It is generally necessary to plan in much greater detail for the various sectors, i.e. the integrated services plans for water, sanitation, transport, storm water, electricity, environmental management, waste management, disaster management - to name but a few. Such plans are not detailed 'master plans', but typically address the status quo, gaps, needs and solutions. It is important, however, that the plans are implementable and not a wish-list.

STRATEGIC FOCUS

At arranged public meetings, the residents of the Hessequa region voiced their opinion that the strategic focus of the Hessequa Municipality in terms of infrastructure delivery must:

- Firstly, to eliminate the backlogs of the past.
- Secondly they want the existing infrastructure to be maintained in a manner which ensures that services will last their estimated life-span.
- Thirdly, that new infrastructure must be planned, designed and timeously constructed in the most cost effective way to ensure that delivery keeps up with expected demand.

The proposed strategic focus for the different services under discussion is as follows:

12.1. Water

Hessequa Municipality has to decide on which strategy they wish to follow. Currently the water services within the municipal area are delivered to consumers by different providers, i.e. the Municipality itself, Overberg Water and irrigation boards.



- Hessequa Municipality is, by law, the water authority in the municipal area.
- Hessequa Municipality, together with Overberg Water and some irrigation boards are the water providers in the municipal area.
- A decision will have to be taken as to who is going to be the water provider in the area. It is believed that it is not cost effective to have more than one provider per municipal area. The following options are available to the Municipality.

Option 1: The Municipality provides all - bulk and internal.

Option 2: The Municipality provides only internal services and buys bulk water from other services providers such as Overberg water.

Option 3: The Municipality provides some of the bulk and internal services, (as is currently supplied).

Option 4: The Municipality provides no service at all and elects to outsource the total water provision service.

A contentious issue that needs addressing is the extension and/or upgrading of the water treatment capacity at Heidelberg. Currently the plant is operated and owned by Overberg Water. The question being asked, however, is who assumes responsibility for the cost involved in the extension/upgrading of the plant - Overberg Water, the Hessequa Municipality, or both? It is accepted practice for the supplier/provider of the water to the consumers to carry the cost for capital projects. Such cost is reclaimed from the tariff charged for the water. In the case of Heidelberg, Overberg Water is the provider of bulk water to the Hessequa Municipality, which means that the Municipality buys water from Overberg Water and Overberg Water has to use their capital funds to upgrade and extend the plant. If the Hessequa Municipality makes a contribution to the capital cost of the plant, this capital cost spent must be reflected in the charged tariff. The question could be asked, however, if (according to the Municipal Finance Management Act) the Hessequa Municipality is allowed to spend capital funds on infrastructure they do not own.

Several options are available to solve this problem.

Option 1: Hessequa Municipality makes no contribution to the capital cost; Overberg Water supplies the required funding and reclaims in from charged tariffs.

Option 2: Hessequa Municipality makes a contribution to the capital cost and pays a lower tariff.

Option 3: Hessequa Municipality takes the Heidelberg Plant over from Overberg Water and execute the necessary extensions.





Option 4: Hessequa Municipality builds and operates their own plant with which to supply the extra water required.

Option 5: Hessequa Municipality, Overberg Water and a third party form a Public Private Partnership (PPP) and upgrade and extend the plant on the *built, own, operate, train and transfer* (BOOTT) -principle.

These options have to be further investigated and an economical analysis done to determine the best solution for the Municipality.

The following strategic focus areas are proposed for water services.

- An investigation into whom the service providers are going to be: firstly for bulk water, and secondly for the internal distribution of water to consumers (*Section 78 Transfer Process*).
- An investigation into possible new water sources.
- The extension and upgrading to the water treatment capacity.
- The treatment of water to a standard that complies with the *SANS 241:2005 Edition 6*.
- The elimination of the backlog in water - especially in the rural areas.
- The update of the Water Master Plan and Water Services Development Plan (WSDP) on a continuous basis.
- The implementation of such plans.
- The drafting of a maintenance plan.
- Maintenance of all water-related infrastructure and assets.

12.2. Sewerage

Keeping in line with the National and Provincial Strategic Focus, the Hessequa Municipality will need to concentrate their strategic focus on the same issues. Therefore the following strategic focus for sewerage is proposed.

- The total elimination of the sanitation backlog in the area - concentrating firstly on the eradication of the bucket system.
- The extension and upgrading to the waste water treatment capacity.
- The treatment of waste water to comply, at all times, with the permit conditions as laid down by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.
- Updating of the Sewer Master Plan on a continuous basis.





- The implementing of the recommendations on the plan.
- The drafting of a maintenance plan.
- Maintenance of all sewage-related infrastructure and assets.

12.3. Roads and Transport

Adequate road infrastructure together with public and private transport facilities, are vital for any region to be economically viable. If these services are not up to standard it can have a detrimental effect on the economy in any municipal area. It is essential, therefore, that all municipal councils take expert care of these assets and the following strategic focus areas in respect of roads and transport are proposed to obtain that goal.

- The maintenance of the road network as described in the Pavement Management Systems.
- This system must be updated on a continuous basis - at least bi-annually.
- The compilation of a road master plan for the area.
- The road master plan must be updated on a continuous basis.
- The implementation of the findings of the road master plan.
- The provision of an efficient public transport infrastructure by implementing the findings of the Integrated Transport Plan.
- To ensure that all public transport plans (such as the Current Public Transport Records, Operating Licence Strategy, Public transport Plan and Integrated Transport Plan) is updated regularly - as required by law.
- That all other outstanding plans be completed as soon as possible.

12.4. Storm water

In the past, the management of storm water has not received the necessary attention from most municipalities in the Western Cape. The changing weather patterns and higher-intensity rainfalls experienced over the past couple of years, necessitates that storm water management receives much more attention in future. Strategic focus will therefore have to fall on the compilation of storm water management plans, as well as proper storm water by-laws for the different towns within the municipal area. The strategic focus areas proposed for storm water are as follows.

- The completion of the storm water master plans as soon as possible.
- The implementation of the findings in the report.





- The compilation of storm water management plan for the different catchments in the urban areas.
- The implementing of the findings of the management plan
- The drafting of proper storm water by-laws for the different towns in the municipal area.
- The drafting of a maintenance plan.
- Regular maintenance of storm water related infrastructure and assets.

12.5. Electricity

Electricity (and the shortage thereof) is one of the major concerns in the country. The Constitution places the responsibility for the supply of bulk electricity (which can include the actual generation of electricity) on district municipalities. Local authorities may, however, also provide this service. It is therefore crucial that local authorities investigate the methods by which to generate electricity. It is proposed that the strategic focus areas for the supply of electricity in a municipal area are as follows.

- An investigation into alternative energy sources has to be conducted.
- Methods in generating electricity will have to be explored.
- The electricity infrastructure master plans for the area must be completed.
- Such master plans have to be implemented.
- A maintenance plan needs to be drafted.
- The electricity infrastructure assets have to be maintained.

12.6. Solid Waste

The strategic focus proposed is as follows.

- The findings and recommendations proposed in the Integrated Waste Management Plan (completed by Kwezi V3 in 2005) are implemented.
- A maintenance plan is to be drafted.
- The waste infrastructure assets must be maintained.





CHAPTER 13: HOUSING

13.1. Strategies

This plan is aligned with the national, provincial policy documents relating to housing e.g. Breaking New Ground provincial housing strategy, Spatial Development Framework, PGDS, etc. Housing projects in towns, will be done on infill/densification and vacant land i.e. the urban edge. This will be reflected in the SDF of Hessequa. Bulk infrastructure will first be implemented to the housing projects (1st year), which will be followed by the construction of the different houses (2nd-3rd year).

13.2. Community participation

The public must participate in the development of their areas to improve ownership and relevance of the areas of development and redevelopment. The principle of community participation and the contribution of housing beneficiaries in building their own areas is a fundamental principle that must guide the municipal activities. More innovative ways that will contribute to the affordability and accessibility of housing materials must be investigated and implemented. The Hessequa Municipality must encourage the training and development of the unemployed designated groups in carpentry, brick-making, plumbing, electricity etc. to form co-operatives that can supply services to the municipality for a period not shorter than three but not longer than Five-Years.

13.3. Alignment

This housing plan is aligned with the Spatial Development Framework of Hessequa which supports integration development patterns in terms of previously disadvantaged communities.

The Plan is also aligned with the Hessequa LED in the sense that work opportunities are created (EPWP), and that preference are given to the PDI community i.e. the Preferential Procurement Policy.

Alignment is also ensured by linkages with National and Provincial policies.

13.4. Strategising housing projects

Although the Municipality is focusing on destitute and homeless residents, municipal strategies should also address alternative types of housing for all the income groups. The Gap Housing market will be explored to cater for the middle income group. Mixed housing (land use) will also be explored in order to facilitate integration in line with the SDF and National and Provincial policy frameworks.

In our endeavour to become a caring Municipality, we must investigate the development of early warning systems and support Programmes to achieve the objective of humanely relocating housing beneficiary families.

Housing Consumer Education Programme – Ongoing process starting 2007 financial year. Housing officials will be tasked to empower households/beneficiaries as they obtain their houses.



CHAPTER 14: SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

14.1. Broad Strategic Intervention

To create an environment to ensure the provision of a comprehensive Social Development network through social capital that enable and empower the youth, the poor, people living with HIV & AIDS, unemployed, vulnerable and those in need. To promote and create an enabling environment for social capital to flourish and the successful implementation of a Local Social Development Strategy.

By implementing the Hessequa Social development Programme, in the context of its 2nd generation IDP, we need to:

- Ensure that the youth of Hessequa Municipality becomes the treasure of energy, creativity and constructive self-introspection for the development of a stronger Hessequa today and a brighter future tomorrow.
- Ensure that the services rendered to the poor, vulnerable, infected and affected people living with HIV & AIDS and TB receive quality services.
- Create an effective developmental partnership between government and civil society, to halt and begin to reverse the spread of HIV & AIDS and Tuberculosis.

14.2. Our Social Development Vision and Mission

To bring back the spirit of UMUNTU NGUMUNTU NGABUNTU, 'a person, is a person through others'. This is based on the principle of Ubuntu, which emphasises Society, Community and Family, and particularly the need for the people of Hessequa to join hands in building a caring community.

As the Municipality and youth of Hessequa, we put forward our mission so as to unlock youth potential as the key to a developing Hessequa by addressing historic imbalances and structural inequalities. Furthering the Hessequa and wherein the youth participate as active participants in a community full of activities. To build a Hessequa community that is responsive to the needs, aspirations, and development requirements of the youth. To within all IDP Programmes, projects and interventions particularly focus on how unemployed youth, out of school youth, those living on the streets, those people who are living with disabilities, those men and women living with HIV & AIDS, can benefit.

Our mission is also to ensure, greater connectivity between government and those that are vulnerable, through continued robust discussion, involving all delegates from government institutions, non-government organisations, ward committees, faith based organisations and youth in partnership with Hessequa Municipality. A key outcome of this developmental partnership, within which the Hessequa Municipality has been tasked to play a coordinating and facilitating role, is the need to develop a strategic plan for coping with the consequences of HIV & AIDS. This will ensure that the municipality, NGO's, and the community work together to effectively address issues like public education, care for people living with AIDS and TB.

Our mission is to ensure a comprehensive network of social development services through social capital formation that enable and empower the poor, the unemployed and vulnerable groups. To infuse across society the value principles and spirit of UBUNTU in order to promote good governance.





14.3. Objectives

Youth Development

Create an enabling environment, facilitating youth debate to help with the provision of appropriate public, private and community-based resources. Improving the quality of life of the youth through dynamic partnerships to create sustainable programmes that should be financially viable, efficient, effective and youth-driven. Transparency on procedure and processes must be followed and the equitable distribution of resources should be addressed not excluding gender, racial, urban/rural and sectoral differences. Officials, Palpitations and Communities account for their actions and that Human, financial and information be accessible. The programmes must be needs driven in an effective efficient way.

14.3.1. HIV & AIDS

To provide access to a comprehensive HIV & AIDS workplace Programme focusing on prevention, treatment, care and support for Hessequa. To improve care support services health facilities in Hessequa. To actively support initiations and development of community interventions Programmes. To embed all HIV & AIDS responses into Hessequa's operations as a service provider and employer.

14.3.2. Vulnerable Groups

Establish active committed volunteerism. Provide quality housing to communities. The municipality must ensure accessible services at community centres, Train more home based care volunteers and give support to home base care projects. To run awareness Programmes on constitutional rights. Promote good governance that is sound and effective and that will protect, develop and care about the vulnerable, and people with disabilities.

14.4. Priorities

14.4.1. Youth Development

Here we undertake to utilize and strengthen existing opportunities, such as Youth Day (16 June) to reinforce youth and youth development through seminars, open days, festivals, workshops, etc. We also undertake to improve access to sustainable livelihoods, entrepreneurial opportunities and productive resources and to empower youth living in poverty by involving them fully in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of strategies and Programmes for poverty eradication and community development.

- We will spare no effort to engage young people in any form of constructive and stimulating work,
- Develop other Programmes such as HIV/AIDS awareness campaigns. Small, medium and macro enterprise sector growth is seen as key to poverty
- Eradication and we undertake to inform would-be entrepreneurs regarding the pitfalls of establishing sustainable business ventures.



- As appropriate education is the key to the future development of our youth, we will endeavour to find ways to ensure that libraries and schools have access to computers for the use of the entire community and undertake to disseminate the grant-in-aid assistance Programme and make it accessible to all
- Give action in establishing a FET College for the Hessequa region
- We also encourage all to involve the youth in Hessequa's major events, campaigns, holiday promotions and sport development Programmes.
- Finally we will give criminal activities and violence our urgent attention in that youth at risk will be identified and all youth will be offered an opportunity to partake in municipal policing and self-defence Programmes Building of youth Centres

14.4.2. HIV & AIDS

Strong political and administrative leadership has been shown to be crucial to success. Coordination between government and non government service providers is crucial to insure putting up a coordination team for cooperation with private initiatives that can contribute to raising the impact of the strategy. Visible and ongoing support by the municipality is important so that current fragmentation can be addressed through the revival and active functioning of structures, forums and inter-departmental forums previously in place.

14.4.3. Vulnerable Groups

In essence to this grouping, as civil society and government we commit ourselves to address key issues such as: Programmes aimed at reducing poverty, develop human potential of our people, through education and skills training. Promote job opportunities for people with special needs, design policies that are friendlier to old people and people with disabilities regarding access to information and access to public and private buildings. Network with all government departments, NGO's and CBO's to effectively provide services on the importance of Women and Child abuse, Teenage pregnancy, Substance Abuse, more friendlier community centre Programmes, housing and basic services to better the life's of those that are in need and vulnerable.

14.5. Conclusion

As the Hessequa Municipality we are committed to the sustainable welfare and development of our people, in this we commit ourselves to best practise, the implementation of delivering ongoing service to the poor, in making sure that all people living in Hessequa, receive equal benefits of all services.

CHAPTER 15: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK : SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

15.1. PREFERRED OUTCOMES OF FRAMEWORK PLAN

1. Maintenance of an urban edge;
2. Densification within identified sub-areas of towns in Hessequa;



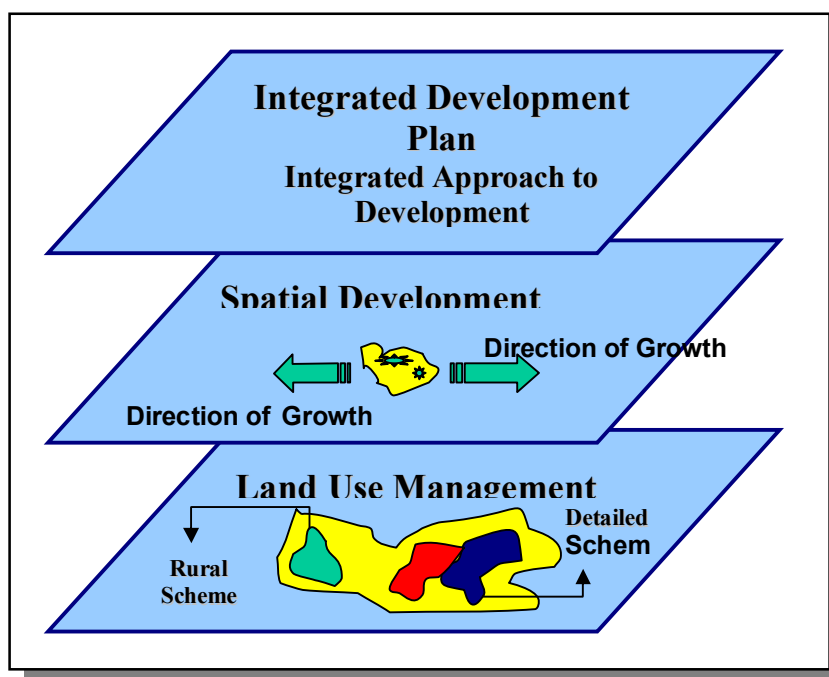


3. Identification of areas falling within the urban services core and those falling outside the core area;
4. Identification of special areas requiring particular land use management input (e.g. public-funded housing areas and their immediate surrounds, rural settlement areas; areas where land reform initiatives are prioritized etc.)

15.2. CHARACTERISTICS OF SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

- Well-managed residential areas
- A growing economy
- Accessible and available social and economic facilities
- Accessible job opportunities
- Accessible transport facilities
- Growth of asset values

15.3. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN IDP AND SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK



15.4. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT OBJECTIVES FOR HESSEQUA

Priority Spatial Development Issue	Objective (What Hessequa Municipality wants to achieve)
1. Spatial Fragmentation	<i>Well-structured, efficient and sustainable towns, which has corrected historically distorted spatial development patterns.</i>



2. Rapid and Unmanaged Urbanisation	<i>Adequate land and services for urbanising (existing and new) communities.</i>
3. Low Density Settlements/Urban Sprawl	<i>Higher density settlements.</i>
4. Uncoordinated Spatial Development	<i>Environmentally sustainable and spatially coordinated sectoral practices.</i>
5. Depletion of Natural Resources and Valuable Agricultural Land	<i>Managed use of natural resources and agricultural land.</i>

15.5. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT STRATEGIES FOR HESSEQUA

The following five spatial development strategies have been formulated to correspond with the spatial development objectives outlined above and, similarly, are based on the outcomes of a participatory planning process: -

1. Consolidate and integrate spatial development by developing land in proximity to public transport facilities and existing services.
2. Support the land reform and settlement Programme by identifying zones of opportunity according to land needs.
3. Pro-actively manage land use and set appropriate levels of service (LOS) to achieve sustainability in urban, peri-urban and rural areas.
4. Implement the principles of Integrated Environment Management (IEM).
5. Identify resources and manage land use in valuable resource areas.

15.6. PRINCIPLES TO ACHIEVE SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

The objective of this Policy Framework is to achieve 'integrated and efficient land use'. To clarify what this means, there are 8 sub-principles;

- (i) The first sub-principle calls for a unified approach to planning. It emphasises that planning is not only about physical development frameworks and spatial decisions. The social, economic, institutional, environmental and other aspects must all be considered together. This means that different government institutions or different departments in one institution (for example, the local economic development department and the urban planning department in a particular local authority) must work together when preparing development frameworks and taking decisions on project proposals.



- (ii) The second sub-principle emphasises that urban and rural planning cannot be done in isolation from each other. Planning and implementing new urban developments must be done in a way that considers the influence and impact of such development on the adjacent rural, undeveloped land. The sub-principle stresses that rural areas and their viability are as important as urban areas.
- (iii) The third sub-principle recognises how important it is for people to live close to job opportunities. This is particularly important for people of lower income who cannot afford high transport costs and the large amount of time taken to travel to work. The planning of industrial and commercial developments must be based on integrating working and residential areas and ensuring the integration of land use with transportation (road and rail networks and modes of public transport).
- (iv) The fourth sub-principle is closely related to (iii). It reminds us that resources are limited and therefore we must make the best possible use of investments that have already been made in existing developments. In other words, if money has already been spent on roads, schools, hospitals, water reservoirs and other infrastructure, new land developments should be close enough to use this existing infrastructure. It is far more expensive and wasteful to create new infrastructure every time a land development is started. This sub-principle also recognises that certain land parcels have intrinsic qualities such as minerals or good quality soils and that these should be taken into account.
- (v) The fifth sub-principle introduces the idea of mixed land-use developments. This means that we should not necessarily plan new areas that are exclusively residential or exclusively commercial. It is better to have a range of different types of land uses in one area. By having mixed land-use we not only create more interesting and vibrant urban places, but we bring people closer to economic activity which improves the economic viability of the area. This principle does not call for mixed land use on every property or every street. If a particular neighbourhood is exclusively residential and the adjacent neighbourhood has retail and other non-residential uses, this also satisfies the principle. The places that are most suitable for mixed development are places of high accessibility. It is important to seek opportunities for mixed land uses, but in a way where other planning principles, such as sustaining the natural environment or providing for residential amenity, are protected.
- (vi) The sixth and seventh sub-principles are very similar and should be read together. With apartheid and the planning of the past, we have created towns that are characterised by 'urban sprawl'. In other words they are very spread out. This means people have to spend a lot of time and money travelling long distances to work, shops, schools and social facilities. It also means that local authorities must spend large amounts on providing and maintaining excessive amounts of infrastructure. Increasingly they cannot afford to do this. Urban sprawl does not use existing infrastructure efficiently because





new developments take place on the edge of the urban areas. It also reduces agricultural land.

The way to correct urban sprawl is to plan for new developments to take place within the already developed areas either on vacant land or through the re-development of existing properties. A good example is where a single house is demolished and a block of flats is erected in its place. This gives more families the opportunity to live in a well-located neighbourhood. The terms 'densification' and 'compact development' are used where more intense development takes place in existing urban areas.

- (vii) The eighth sub-principle is about sustaining a good relationship between settlements and the natural environment around them. Any settlement has an impact on the natural environment and is affected by the natural environment. It requires inputs from the environment (for example, land, water, fuel and electricity) and it generates wastes (for example, solid waste, air pollution and sewerage). When planning settlements, as many of the inputs required should come from the area, and as many of the wastes should be handled in the area. As many wastes as possible should be recycled. Unique land features, plants and animals should be protected. Settlements should not be situated in areas where there is a high risk of floods, pollution or land subsidence. Also water catchment areas should be protected from settlement because of the risk of pollution. The impact of a settlement on the natural environment should be as small as possible.

CHAPTER 16: Hessequa Environmental Management and Sustainable Development Framework

HESSEQUA CONSERVATION PLANNING FRAMEWORK

16.1 Empowering Individuals and Institutions

Implementing conservation action successfully is dependent upon people. People manage landscapes, and it is the philosophy and approach they adopt to land use decision-making which determines the degree to which the environmental processes essential for sustaining life, such as hydrological flows, faunal movements and pollination, are maintained. Land use practices which unduly compromise environmental processes lead to declining environmental values, including habitat loss, declining numbers of plant and animal species, soil erosion, and declining air and water quality. If we are determined to implement conservation action successfully – and do we have any other choice? – we must involve land use decision-makers. In short, conservation is about people.

The Hessequa strategy makes provision to eagerly seek stakeholder participation, for it is clear that empowering individuals and institutions is essential to achieving conservation objectives, such as those pertaining to the Hessequa. The degree to which initiatives have successfully attained lasting and effective stakeholder involvement varies dramatically. Typically though, the discipline of conservation planning has been slow, indeed reticent, to engage people. Instead it has focused upon the resolution of technical



problems of conservation assessment. This stance has limited the general effectiveness of conservation planning at implementing conservation action and management. We can call this phenomenon the 'implementation crises'. Developing and improving ways of engaging stakeholders in conservation planning initiatives is critical to the discipline's success, and will ensure its societal relevance.

16.2 Defining the Planning Region

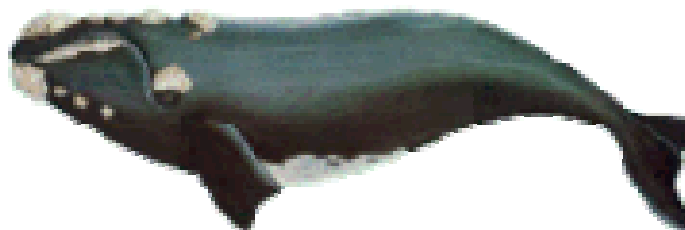
Defining who to involve and where to undertake a conservation planning initiative is the most fundamental of conservation planning decisions. The success of stakeholder involvement, the technical conservation assessment, and a streamlined implementation phase hinge upon this choice. People are connected to place. Most people have somewhere they call 'home', a landscape where they feel they belong or which defines them.

16.3 Delineating the Planning Region

The limits of both the people and the places to be covered by a conservation planning initiative are best defined spatially as a planning region. There are many definitions of what constitutes a region and they vary according to the objectives of the discipline. The discipline of landscape ecology defines a region as: a broad geographical area with a common macroclimate and sphere of human activity and interest. It is tied together relatively tightly by transportation, communication, and culture, as in the idea of regionalism, but is often extremely diverse ecologically. This bioregional approach to conservation planning is essential for successfully effecting implementation. Defining sub-regions within the planning region is an important stage which is critical for implementation. Sub-regions provide a framework which fills a variety of roles including facilitating technical aspects of conservation assessment such as analyses of geographic range, sampling within-class environmental variation.

16.4 Identifying Key Stakeholders

- Successfully implementing conservation assessment outputs depends upon identifying stakeholders and their respective social, political, economic and environmental influences.



16.5 Benchmark Assessment of Research Gaps

To accurately target research needs, there is an urgent requirement for a benchmark assessment and gap analysis of research across the ecological (evolution, biogeography and ecology), social science (demography, anthropology, and political), economic and agricultural disciplines in the Hessequa domain. If ecologically sustainable land management is to be successfully implemented in the Hessequa region, research needs to be undertaken into:

- eco-tourism;
- the social implications of the diversification of farming activities (i.e. increase in mixed farming);



- the viability and potential effectiveness of implementing 'green branding' certification for best practice farming, incentives to eradicate alien vegetation
- the values of the natural resources of the Hessequa for rural communities (communal, poor rural on farms, white commercial), identifying, in particular, which and how much of these elements are utilized, how dependent are these communities upon these elements for their livelihood, and what incentives might be used to encourage people to change their behaviours so as to encourage ecologically sustainable land management;
- the social and economic viability of establishing self-funded community-based restoration Programmes;
- identify production activities which promote livelihoods, and to understand attitudes towards conservation and restoration;

16.6 Identify and Assess Land use

Land uses include many activities, the majority of which will degrade or destroy landscapes if not undertaken in an ecologically sustainable manner. They include conservation areas, grazing, mining or urbanisation. The vast majority of land uses are typically constraints to conservation planning, for they compete for land with conservation efforts because they do not have ecologically sustainable land management as a primary goal. This is predominantly the case because most land uses exploit natural resources for economic or social gain. For example, agriculture and mining extract produce and minerals respectively from landscapes for profit, whilst urbanisation seeks to provide housing and services to human communities, which typically means permanently altering landscapes.

However, some forms of land use are conducted in an ecologically sustainable manner. Ecotourism or sustainable agriculture (e.g. sustainable pastoralism and 'grow to harvest' schemes) are potentially opportunities within the Hessequa, for they promote nature conservation. Understanding the goals, operation and impacts of these land uses is critical because they need to be supported and encouraged as examples of alternative, yet profitable, forms of land use. Identifying and assessing land uses as opportunities and constraints requires that land uses and their associated pressures on natural systems be mapped. In particular two types of data are ideally required. Firstly, data on the current land uses across the planning region are required. This information assists in identifying where opportunities for nature conservation occur in the landscape. Secondly, data is required on the potential spread of land uses which compromise natural systems. This typically involves modelling future land use pressures. Both types of data require spatially explicit measures of the extent and pattern of land use.

The modelling of future land use pressures requires some measure of the rate at which natural landscapes are being transformed. It is essential that land uses are linked to their root drivers, so that the real mechanisms which are driving landscape degradation can be identified

16.7 Promote Sustainable Nature-based Tourism



- Conservation areas within the Hessequa (Werner Frehse, Pauline Bohnen, Skulpiesbaai Grootvadersbosch, Reins Nature Reserve), and indeed other conservation instruments, aim to remove areas of significant conservation value or priority from land use pressures which threaten to degrade or destroy them. Regional conservation planning aims to achieve this by identifying a subset of priority conservation areas from all sites within a planning region and implementing instruments at these sites to protect them. Historically, protected areas are seen as the corner-stone to such conservation efforts. They are perceived as the most secure because they are typically managed by a government authority and are protected under legislation. However, the majority of land in the majority of regions across the world is privately owned by individuals or small communities. Landowners have the legal (and arguably the moral) right to manage land as they see fit, and usually nature conservation is not their primary goal. It is widely recognised that if nature conservation is to be successful then non-public (non-government managed) land must be a strong focus.

16.8 Develop a Model of Land Management

The delivery, implementation and marketing of a regional conservation planning initiative require a model of land management to be adopted by all stakeholders. The key function of the model of land management is to translate the Hessequa vision and goals into a testable, explicit and pragmatic real-world vision of how our natural resources would be ideally managed in an ecologically sustainable manner. It provides a mechanism which explicitly bridges the regional-scale of conservation assessment to the local-scale of implementation. The model embodies a finer-scale level of planning than presented by the conservation assessment outputs. It provides stakeholders with a tangible vision of their possible future.

16.9 Develop an Implementation Strategy

The purpose of an Implementation Strategy is to broadly outline the ingredients and approach for implementing conservation action. The Hessequa strategy undertakes to identify the key strands of action necessary to successfully implement nature conservation at a regional scale. These strands will undertake to be clearly evident within the model of land management for this provides the vision for implementation, and is a critical element in the development of the Strategy. The Hessequa Strategy document undertakes to be a living document – a practical tool which facilitates action Policy dictates this to be structured in a way which integrates with the operational plans of conservation and land management institutions, as well as the activities of individual landowners. A carefully considered structure will greatly facilitate implementation by simplifying mainstreaming and ensuring that stakeholders identify with this Strategy.

The Hessequa Strategy continues to be inclusive of proactive planning, reactive planning, and the removal of constraints to implementation. The Implementation Strategy can be founded on complementary maps, which capture the goals and objectives of the conservation planning initiative. The benefits of this map-based strategy are that priority conservation areas, tenures, target areas for Programmes, and responsibilities can all be defined in a spatially-explicit manner



The Hessequa Implementation Strategy endeavours to be co-operatively developed with stakeholders. It is a critical instrument for aligning the goals and activities of key stakeholders. It is essential that all key stakeholders are linked to instruments for effecting conservation action for which they have a strong interest or statutory responsibility.

16.10 Monitor, Evaluate and Ensure Landscape Management

The disciplines of conservation planning and conservation management should both be based upon explicit goals and targets. The evaluation of the effectiveness of conservation instruments at a regional-scale is essential to ensure not only that natural features are represented to conservation target levels in conservation areas, but also that the conservation areas are effectively protecting features from processes which degrade them.

Bioregional conservation planning initiatives rarely assess the effectiveness of the conservation area networks that they select and design. Forays into the effectiveness of conservation area networks are typically limited to assessments of representativeness or gap analyses which say little about persistence within the Hessequa.



CHAPTER 17: STRATEGIC LONG TERM VISION

17.1. WHAT INFORMS HESSEQUA VISION

Our Vision is embedded within and builds on the President's drive to raise South Africa's development prospects by 2014 as set out in ASGI-SA, the State of the Nation Address, the Medium Term Strategic Framework and the National Spatial Development Perspective. Our Vision for Hessequa is also embedded within iKapa Elihlumayo, that is not simply about accelerated and shared growth, but sets the platform for a development strategy which views poverty reduction, the empowerment of historically disadvantaged people and economic growth as being interdependent goals in the medium to long term. iKapa Elihlumayo, is about acknowledging that the fates of the rich and the poor intertwined, that the only option for sustained economic growth is to widen economic participation and to spread the benefits of growth.

Based on these fundamentals, in order to set our new Hessequa Vision apart from previous ones, within it equity, empowerment and environmental concerns should not just be given equal weight to economic imperatives, but as an essential part of our economic imperative; we should further ensure that these important principles manifest themselves to ensure spatial integration. Hessequa Vision 2027 as a core part of the 2nd generation Hessequa IDP, challenges all role-players involved in and concerned with Hessequa's success to take hands in engaging in a range of strategic interventions. Our Vision is set within the context of sustainable development and is based on our underlying principles of social equality, economic inclusion and environmental integrity.

THE ESSENCE OF HESSEQUA

The Hessequa region is to be differentiated from all other regions in the world by virtue of its unique identity. Workshops were held with the community, councillors, economic sectors and our Advice forums to determine just what the core values and unique assets of our region are. It was agreed that the "Essence of Hessequa" is creativity – from antiquity to today and is informed by our heritage being our ecological, archeological, historical and cultural heritage.

Hessequa's creativity is manifest in the Blombos engravings, the fully functioning ancient fish traps of Hessequa, in the slave art of the region, in the gallery of famous authors and poets who lived and still live in Hessequa, and in the living artists of today such as the prize-winning Kairos drama group in Heidelberg. A particular embodiment of Hessequa creativity is the rock art of the San found in abundance in Hessequa's mountains.

The mix of Hessequa's fauna, flora, riverine and marine resources coupled to a benign climate probably not only contributed to man's epic crossing of the divide from animal to rational being, but also nurtured his long survival in this region. For at least seventy millennia hunter-gatherers (the San and their forebears) lived in the Hessequa region in balance with nature, an unsurpassed example of sustainable land-use and the longest record on earth of the occupation of a single area by modern man.

For the last three thousand years or so the San were joined by the region's first agriculturalists (the Khoi herdsman). The region's name in fact is derived from a regional Khoi tribe who were successful herdsman and traders and the name of one of its rivers honours a famous and wise Khoi chief, Goukou.





The San and Khoi heritage of Hessequa is special. Given the fact that some 70 percent of the present Hessequa population are directly descended from the Khoi and San, the Hessequa Council aims to honour and protect the Khoisan heritage of the region.

Our identity and common ancestry inspires our vision of tomorrow

17.2. LONG TERM VISION MISSION AND OBJECTIVES

17.2.1. VISION

Hessequa Vision 2027 seeks to define a long-term growth and development path which:

- ◆ Eradicates poverty and enhances general quality of life
- ◆ Expands economic participation and empowerment rates
- ◆ Ensures spatial integration and enhanced performance
- ◆ Protects sensitive environmental assets and enhances environmental quality
- ◆ Minimises negative resources impacts and adapts to climate change
- ◆ Improves social cohesion and good governance

Hessequa vision 2027

A cooperative community where everyone reaps the fruit of a growing economy through sustainable development and utilization of our human potential and our natural resources.

Guiding principles:

- Hessequa understands that “communities that cooperate go forward, those that do not, stagnate”. Successful economic restructuring, therefore, requires:
 - Trust among all the groups and people of Hessequa,
 - Strong leadership at all levels of society,
 - Participation by everyone willing to become part of the effort,
 - Effective communications throughout.
- Hessequa understands that today’s problems must be addressed without jeopardizing the futures of tomorrow’s generations.
- We are taking the lead, as our ancestors did, to create a prosperous society in harmony with nature.

Proposed Outcomes:

- ◆ Creating liveable communities
- ◆ Fostering resilient and creative communities
- ◆ Broadening economic participation
- ◆ Ensuring greater spatial integration
- ◆ Investing in efficient ‘connectivity infrastructures’
- ◆ Nurturing a culture of tolerance and mutual respect through social cohesion





17.2.2. MISSION

Our Mission

To be a co-operative and prosperous community where present and future generations will be able to share equally in the bounty of our region, ensuring that fundamental needs are met, guarding our environmental, archeological and cultural heritage to live in harmony with nature and each other in honour of our common ancestry and the place which gave rise to our humanity.

17.3. OUR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS

Sustainable Development Goals

Primary Goal: Care for the Environment

The conservation, protection and maintenance of supporting ecosystems and natural resources is identified as a prerequisite for SD

Our Sustainable Development Goals are as follows:

- Eradicate poverty and ensure human dignity
- Provide quality of life for all residents
- Facilitate economic participation for all
- Protect and improve environmental assets
- Improve social cohesion
- Provide good governance
- Invest in renewable energy
- Improve energy and resource use efficiency
- Build and maintain quality infrastructure
- Ensure spatial integration
- Creating sustainable neighbourhoods
- Reduce income disparities
- Reconnect the rural and urban economies
- Prevent negative resource impact
- Improve capacity for disaster management
- Respect the limits of nature's regenerative abilities
- Adapt to climate change
- Adopt a differentiating economic strategy
- Create a strong sense of place and identity
- Progress towards a circular economy
- Ensure integrity of sensitive ecosystems
- Foster a culture of independence, responsibility and mutual respect
- Retain wealth within the local area
- Promote economic diversity and resilience.
- Build capacity and establish mechanisms to implement developmental projects





17.4. OUR STRATEGIC IDP OBJECTIVES

- 1** Ensure Good Governance through institutional transformation, inter-governmental co-operation and public consultation to ensure accountability.
- 2** Ensure sound financial management, maximised resource mobilisation through the effective and efficient utilisation of scarce resources.
- 3** Develop economic, human and social capital of our people, with special focus on the vulnerable groups.
- 4** Sustain Hessequa environment through resource conservation, good land-use practices and people-centered planning
- 5** Strategic Investment in quality basic services and efficient 'connectivity infrastructure'
- 6** Create an enabling social environment that ensures safe, healthy and vibrant communities.

17.5. OUR PLEDGE

Our pledge:

The Hessequa municipality will be honoured to serve the people of this region, be the driver of innovation, responsive to the needs of all its citizens, and ensure affordable, efficient and reliable services fully transparent, accountable and demonstrate zero tolerance with regard to corruption



17.6. ALIGNMENT OF PLANNING INITIATIVES

Millennium Development Goals	ASGISA	IKAPA ELIHLUMAYO	WESTERN CAPE SDF	EDEN DM IDP	HESSEQUA 2027	I N T E G R A T E D D E V E L O P M E N T P L A N
Eradicate extreme poverty and hunger	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sector investments 2nd Economy issues 	Micro economic strategy	Align future settlement patterns with economic potential	Dev appropriate regional eco that ensures safe, healthy and vibrant communities		
Achieve universal primary education	Skills and Education initiatives	Building human capital with an emphasis on youth	Deliver human dev and basic needs programme	Develop human and social capital by investing in woman & youth		
Promote gender equality and empower woman				Dev human and social capital by investing in woman and youth		
Reduce child mortality		Building social capital with an emphasis on youth		Dev human and social capital by investing in woman and youth		
Improve maternal health		Building social capital with an emphasis on youth		Create an enabling environment that ensures safe, healthy & vibrant communities		
Combat HIV/AIDS, malaria and other diseases		Building social capital with an emphasis on youth		Create an enabling environment that ensures safe, healthy & vibrant communities		
Ensure environmental sustainability		Provincial spatial development framework	Protect biodiversity and agricultural resources	Sustain Eden environment through resource conservation		
Develop a global partnership for development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Infrastructure programmes Public 	Strategic infrastructure investment	Conveniently locate urban activities and promote public and non motorized transport	Ensure effective & affordable service & infrastructure delivery		





17.7. STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS BY OBJECTIVE, CLUSTER AND FOCUS AREA

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES 1:
Ensure good governance through institutional transformation, inter-governmental co-operation and public consultation to ensure accountability.
IDP CLUSTER 1:
Administration and Finance

RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT: Administration, ICT

KEY FOCUS AREAS: Administration

Focus Area 1: Ward Committees

Focus Area 2: Skills Development

FOCUS AREA 1: WARD COMMITTEES

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
		All		

FOCUS AREA 2: SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
		All		





KEY FOCUS AREAS: Information, Communication and Technology

- Focus Area 1: Service Delivery
- Focus Area 2: Efficient Communication
- Focus Area 3: Support
- Focus Area 4: Capacity Building and Training

FOCUS AREA 1: SERVICE DELIVERY

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Provide Infrastructure	Provide “front-desk” staff with PC’s, access, info and equipment needed to assist public in most effective and efficient manner	All	Operational and Capital Budget	07/08
Train & Empower Staff	Provide staff with training and problem solving skills to solve a member of the public problem in shortest time, following the correct channels	All	Administration Training Budget but otherwise cost free	07/08
Ensure stable network	Strengthen, ensure and support backbone of network to handle all possible needs and to provide stable and reliable information	All	Operational Budget	07/08

FOCUS AREA 2: EFFICIENT COMMUNICATION

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Ensure PC, Email, Collab Access	Ensure that staff have PC access when required and the ability to communicate with other staff and departments to enhance service delivery	All	Operational and Capital Budget	07/08
Remote office empowerment	Allow access to remote offices nearest to the people which can serve them in anyway, in the shortest time possible and	All	Operational and Capital Budget	07/08





	facilitate their problems.			
Up-to-date Website and facilities	Ensure that public have access to municipal services and that they can communicate with the relevant staff in any method easiest for them. An up-to-date multifunctional website to service as medium for access to information and online services.	All	Operational Budget	07/08

FOCUS AREA 3: SUPPORT

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Hardware & Software Problems	Speedy solutions to problems experienced by staff in a formally prioritized manner.	All	Operational and mostly Capital Budget	07/08
Call Centre	Ensure skills and equipment required are delivered to staff tasked to support and facilitate the public in their problems, queries and its resolution.	All	Operational, Personnel and Capital Budget	07/08
Sharing Information	Ensure that internal communication, systems and skills are in place to allow staff the ability to help each other and help the public in anyway possible, even if not in their own department or responsibility	All	Operational and Capital Budget	07/08





FOCUS AREA 4: CAPACITY BUILDING AND TRAINING

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Staff and Council	Train and facilitate training of staff and councillors to ensure the best use of the resources at hand to make their work easier and faster and more productive.	All	Training, Operational and Capital Budget	07/08
Programmes	Ensure staff have access to Programmes required for their responsibilities and sufficient training to use them. Facilitate the acquisition of software and Programmes which could help any department.	All	Various Departmental Operational and Capital Budgets	07/08
Internal Capacity	Strengthen internal systems and infrastructure to provide a solid supportive foundation to facilitate future services and needs	All	Operational and Capital Budget	07/08

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES 2:
Ensure sound financial management, maximised resource mobilisation through the effective and efficient utilisation of scarce resources.
IDP CLUSTER 1:
Administration and Finance





STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 3:
Develop economic, human and social capital by specifically investing in the development of women, youth and people with disabilities.
IDP CLUSTER :
Socio-Economic

RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT: Social and Economic Development

KEY FOCUS AREAS: Sosio-Economic Development

- Focus Area 1: Grow/stabilize the Hessequa agricultural sector
- Focus Area 2: Grow the tourism sector
- Focus Area 3: Grow the construction sector
- Focus Area 4: Grow the retirement sector
- Focus Area 5: Keystone projects
- Focus Area 6: Special projects

FOCUS AREA 1: THE HESSEQUA AGRICULTURAL SECTOR

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Re-institute Agricultural Advisory Committee and integrate activities with other advisory committees	Develop a body to lead the planning of future agriculture in Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council, Agricultural Advisory Committee, organised agriculture, other advisory committees, farmers and agricultural unions. Indicator: Committee established and integrated	All	R50 000	2007/2008





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Broad-based strategic planning for the agricultural sector (including diversification and value addition)	To develop a strategic plan for the next 5 years. Stakeholders: Agricultural Advisory Committee, organised agriculture, farmers and the Economic Development Advisory Committee. Indicator: Plan finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	R25 000	2008/2009
Land ownership in Hessequa	To develop a strategic plan for the next 5 years. Stakeholders: Agricultural Advisory Committee, organised agriculture, land owners, agricultural unions, small farmers. Indicator: Plan finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	R25 000	2008/2009
Agri-BBBEE in Hessequa	To develop a regional Agricultural Charter for the next 5 years. Stakeholders: Agricultural Advisory Committee, organised agriculture, landowners, agricultural unions and small farmers. Indicator: Charter finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	R25 000	2008/2009
Social contract in Hessequa agriculture	To develop a new social contract for this sector. Stakeholders: Agricultural Advisory Committee, organised agriculture, land owners, agricultural unions and Hessequa municipality. Indicator: Plan finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	R25 000	2008/2009
Rural Development Initiative	Integrated rural development and service delivery. Stakeholders: Hessequa municipality, landowners, farm workers and unions. Indicators: Appointment of Rural Development Officer and progress with plans to provide integrated rural development services.	All	R200 000	2008/2009
Rural Sporting Day	Sporting day for all farming communities	All	R25 000	2007/2008





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Developing the human capital of farming communities	To develop a strategic plan for the next year. Stakeholders: Advisory Committee, Organised Agriculture, Land Owners, Agri Unions, Upcoming farmers.	All	R50 000	2007/2008





FOCUS AREA 2: THE HESSEQUA TOURISM SECTOR

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Create a Tourism Forum/Advisory Committee and integrate activities with other forums/advisory committees	Develop a body to lead the planning of future tourism in Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council, information offices, other advisory committees, owners of accommodation facilities, restaurants and the PDI community.	All	R20 000	2008/2009
Complete the strategic plan for tourism in Hessequa	Complete the strategic plan for tourism. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council, Tourism Forum, information offices, other advisory committees, owners of accommodation facilities and restaurants, Eden District Municipality, CTRU	All	R20 000 plus funds supplied by Eden District municipality (R50 000)	2007/2008
BBBEE in Hessequa tourism, Encouraging SMME and PDI development	Develop a regional sectoral charter for the next 5 years. Stakeholders: Tourism Forum, information offices, other advisory committees, owners of accommodation facilities and restaurants. Indicator: Charter finalized after stakeholder interactions and BEE scorecard implemented.	All	R240 000	2007/2008
Public access to Hessequa coast	Ensure that the coastline of Hessequa is available for tourist access. Stakeholders: Tourism Forum, coastal landowners and Hessequa municipality. Indicator: Plan for public access according to new legislation finalized after stakeholder interactions	1, 3 ,4	R20 000	2008/2009
Structure to manage integrated tourism and reorganisation of information offices	Ensure effective tourist information about Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa municipality, Tourism Forum, information offices, owners of accommodation facilities and restaurants. Indicator: Plan for	All	R538 400	2007/2008





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
	Western Gateway, Plan for future of present information offices, creation of Section 21 Company to manage tourism.			
See also Keystone project (later): Archaeological Interpretation centre, Riversdale.		6,7,8		
Branding and marketing of Hessequa	Build Hessequa Identity and market the region. Stakeholders: Hessequa Municipality, Tourism Forum, information offices. Indicator: Identity established and marketing plans being implemented	All	R320 000	2007/2008
Focused support i.t.o the operating costs of tourism offices	Provision of support necessary to expand tourism industry. Stakeholders: Hessequa Municipality and the Tourism Forum. Indicators: Support for: Events, specific segments, township and informal tourism, upgrading infrastructure.	All	R150 000	2007/2008
Special activities	Additional support to tourism industry. Stakeholders: Hessequa Municipality and the Tourism Forum. Indicators: Completion of applied research, provision of better statistics, support of Hessequa Development Agency, Cooperation with Eden District Municipality and CTRU, Department of Economic Development and Tourism (DEDT).	All	R160 000	2008/2009

FOCUS AREA 3: THE HESSEQUA CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Strategic planning for each town/village	Develop a development path for each town and village. Stakeholders: Hessequa municipality, residents of towns and villages, DBSA and PGWC. Indicators: Development plans for each town/village based on Spatial Development Framework	All	R80 000	2008/2009
Create a Construction Industry Forum	Create a body to lead the planning of the future of the construction industry in Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council, municipal officials, representatives of the construction industry. Indicator: Forum established and convened	All	R20 000	2008/2009
Develop a strategic plan for the construction industry in Hessequa	Develop a strategic plan for the construction industry for the next 3 years. Stakeholders: Construction Industry Forum, municipal officials, Hessequa business sector.	All	R25 000	2008/2009
BBBEE in the Hessequa construction industry	To develop a regional construction industry sectoral charter for the next 5 years. Stakeholders: Construction Industry Forum, municipal officials, business sector. Indicator: Charter finalized after stakeholder interactions, BEE scorecard implemented	All	R25 000	2008/2009
Gender and skills development in the construction industry	Develop and implement a gender and skills development plan for the construction industry. Stakeholders: Construction Industry Forum, Hessequa municipality. Indicator: Plan for skills development finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	R25 000	2008/2009





FOCUS AREA 4: THE RETIREMENT INDUSTRY

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Create a Retirement Industry Forum	Constitute a body to lead the planning of the future of the retirement industry in Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council, municipal officials, developers, estate agents, the construction industry, retired people, service providers.	All	R20 000	2008/2009
Building the retirement industry of Hessequa	Develop a strategic plan for the next 3 years. Stakeholders: Retirement Industry Forum, municipal officials	All	R25 000	2008/2009

FOCUS AREA 5: KEYSTONE PROJECTS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Keystone project No. 1 Archaeological Interpretation Centre in Riversdale	Create major new tourist attraction. Stakeholders: Hessequa municipality, Francis Gerard, Funding bodies, Archaeological Advisory Committee. Indicator: Implementation plan developed.	3,6,7 & 8	R200 000 for next planning phase	2007/2009
Keystone Project No. 2 Part 1 Establish a Development Agency (Special Purpose Vehicle, SPV)	Create capacity and means to plan and drive economic, social and environmental development. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and municipality, Economic Development Advisory Committee, Hessequa residents. Indicator: Plan approved and SPV established.	All	R500 000	2007/2008
Keystone Project No. 2 Part 2	Ensuring the financial sustainability of SPV. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and	All	Sources of funds to be developed or established.	2007/2008





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Funding of SPV	municipality, Economic Development Advisory Committee. Indicator: Financial plan approved, Hessequa policies in place, Funds for SPV operations available			
Keystone Project No. 2 Part 3 Strategic planning of SPV and Hessequa municipal operations	SPV to improve the integrated strategic planning of Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and municipality, Economic Development Advisory Committee. Indicators: SPV's first strategic plan approved, SPV involved in the strategic planning of Hessequa Municipality	All	R150 000	2008/2009
Keystone project 3 Coastal megapark	Plan a coastal megapark in cooperation with the Gouritz Initiative. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and municipality, Gouritz Initiative, nature conservancies in Hessequa, Cape Nature, SAN Parks, Hessequa Environmental Advisory Committee, private landowners. Indicator: Plan in place and approved	1,3,4	R100 000	2008/2009

FOCUS AREA 6: SPECIAL PROJECTS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Leadership development	Develop stronger community leadership in Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and municipality, SPV, residents of Hessequa. Indicator: training courses selected and implemented, a significant number of people trained.	All	R200 000	2008/2010
Entrepreneurship development	Training people for a different future in which they are self-sufficient.	All	R100 000	2008/2010





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
	Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and municipality, SPV and the residents of Hessequa. Indicator: training courses selected and implemented, a significant number of people trained.	All		
Adding value through low-technology business development	Increasing Hessequa's capabilities to add value to its primary products. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and municipality, SPV and residents of Hessequa. Indicator: Training course selected and implemented, a significant number of people trained.	All	R100 000	2008/2010
Investigating the potential of green technologies	Assessment of green technology use in Hessequa. Stakeholders: Hessequa Council and municipality, SPV. Indicator: Assessment done and recommendations provided	All	R300 000	2008/2010





KEY FOCUS AREAS: Social Development
 Focus Area 1: YOUTH
 Focus Area 2: HIV/AIDS
 Focus Area 3: VULNERABLE GROUPS
 Focus Area 4:

FOCUS AREA 1: YOUTH

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Life skills Projects	Train the Trainer – different Programmes, HIV & AIDS Councillors, Mentoring, Home Based Care Volunteers.	All	No Funds	2007/2008-2008/2009
Hessequa Youth Council	The establishment of a Hessequa youth Council to monitor the issues of young people.	All	No funds but funds should be identified to complete this initiative	2007/2008
Awareness Campaigns	HIV & AIDS, Drug & Alcohol Abuse, Environmental Management, Crime Prevention etc.	All	No Funds	2007/2008-2008/2009
Education & Training	Career Choices, After Care, Computer Literacy, Drivers Licence, Entrepreneurial Training, Personal Management Training etc	All	No Funds	2007/2008-2008/2009
Bursaries Students	To give bursaries to the best students in their respective schools focussing on Maths & Science.	All	R 72.000.00	2007/2008
Hessequa Athletic Meeting	To promote sport amongst young people in line with governments vision	All	R 40.000.00	2007/2008
Hessequa Capacity Building Project (Leadership)	Giving life skills to the youth with the emphasis on Street Children	All	No funds available. Funds need to be found	2007/2008-2008/2009





FOCUS AREA 2: HIV/AIDS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
HIV & Aids Awareness	Educating and sensitising our people regarding the epidemic.	All	R 30.000.00	2007/2008
Home Base Volunteers	Training of people to do Home Base Volunteer Programmes	All	No Funds available but it will be necessary to project funds somewhere	2008/2009

FOCUS AREA 3: VULNERABLE GROUPS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Hessequa ABET Project	Educating our people in the skills ABET training provides to the people	All but emphasis on wards 1,5,6,8	R 20.000.00	2007/2008-2008/2009
Home Base Care	Delivery of service to the people of Home Base Care Centres	All	R 30.000.00	2007/2008
Soeterus Old Age Home	Giving support to the establishment of the Centre	1	R 200.000.00	2007/2008
Senior Burger Sports Day	Through this initiative and in line with the province keeping our elders active in the community	All	R 40.000.00	2007/2008
Hessequa out of the Bush	Training of Street children in different Life Skills	All	R 30.000.00	2007/2008
Christmas Parcels	Celebrating the Born of Jesus Christ and making our children feel special	All	No funds available	2007/2008
Christmas Meals	To provide meals for the needy people in the spirit of Christmas and sharing	All	R 30.000.00	2007/2008





FOCUS AREA 4: SPECIAL PROJECTS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Masakhana Educators	Educate the Community around the issues in paying of Municipal Services	All	R 144.000.00	2007/2008
Sport Gale Evening P	To give recognition to Sportsman and Women for Achievements during the year	All	R 120.000.00	2007/2008
Hessequa Promotion	The Marketing of the Town	All	R 132.000.00	2007/2008
Development of Support Facilities	The Construction and Maintaining of Facilities	All	R 250.000.00	2007/2008
Six a side Cricket		All	R 40.000.00	2007/2008
Festivals and Public Holidays	Celebrate and Commemorate the important days of history in South Africa	All	R 60.000.00	2007/2008
Hessequa Half Marathon	Encouraging people to look at there health sport through this initiative and also involvement in			2007/2008
Cleanup Campaign	Employing 8 Small Contractors	All	R 550.000.00	
Walls of Remembrance	To put these halls to commemorate our history, diversity and Cultures	All	R 50.000.00	2007/2008
Hessequa Taal, Kultuur Advies Committee		All	R 50.000.00	2007/2008
Cleanest Garden	Educating our people and sensitising them around there environment	All	R 12.000.00	2007/2008
Cape Epic Cycle Tour	To promote our area through this initiative	All	R 40.000.00	2007/2008
Capacity Building Farmer Workers	Training and developing skills amongst Farm Workers	All	R 50.000.00	2007/2008





STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 4:
Sustain Hessequa environment through resource conservation, good land-use practices and people-centered planning
IDP CLUSTER 4:
Planning and Environment

RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT: Development Planning

KEY FOCUS AREAS: Development Planning

- Focus Area 1: SDF
- Focus Area 2: INTEGRATED HUMAN SETTLEMENTS
- Focus Area 3: HERATIGE
- Focus Area 4: ENVIRONMENT

FOCUS AREA 1: SDF

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Vacant Land Audit	Audit of all vacant and under utilized land within the Municipality	All	R 80 000 PAWC (received)	2007/2008
Densification Study	Densification Study of all towns within the Municipality	All	R 50 000 PAWC (funds allocated. Not yet received)	2007/2008
Mixed Socio-economic land use study	Mixed socio-land use study of all towns within Municipality	All	R 50 000 PAWC (funds allocated. Not yet received)	2007/2008





FOCUS AREA 2: INTEGRATED HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Economic housing	Development of economical erven for GAP housing	1,6, 7 and 8	Council: R100 000 for consultants	2007/2008
Industrial erven	Development of Industrial erven	6, 7 and 8	Council: R100 000 for consultants	2007/2008

FOCUS AREA 3: AESTHETICS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
CBD Revitalisation Programme	Compilation of a CBD Revitalisation Programme for Riversdale	6	Council R400 000	2007/2008
Jurisch Park	Re-development and upgrading of Jurisch Park, Riversdale	6	Council R200 000	2007/2008

- FOCUS AREA 4: ENVIRONMENT
 Focus Area 4.1: MUNICIPAL NATURE RESERVES
 Focus Area 4.2: ECO SCHOOLS / GLOBE / WOLD CONGRESS
 Focus Area 4.3: RIVERS
 Focus Area 4.4: ANIMAL PROTECTION SOCIETIES
 Focus Area 4.5: ENVIRONMENTAL CAPACITY BUILDING AND EMPOWERMENT
 Focus Area 4.6: GENERAL PROJECT INITIATIVES

FOCUS AREA 4.1: MUNICIPAL NATURE RESERVES

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Werner Frehse	Salaries x 1 employee @ R80-00 per day - Gate control cleaning and maintenance / alien eradication on-going	8	R 30 000 - 00	2007/2008
Upgrading Picnic Area	General Maintenance Costs	All	R 40 000 - 00	2007/2008
Witsand Reserve	On going Alien Eradication	4	R 15 000 - 00	2007/2008
Pauline Bohnen	Salaries x employees for 47 weeks @ R80.00 per day + R8-00 per day transport	1	R103 400 -00	





Stilbaai Honorarium	Honorarium Dr Naude @ R 3852 -00 per month	1,3	R 46 224-00	
Skulpiesbaai Reserve	On-going Maintenance of reserve	1,3	R 15 000-00	
Management Plans	3 Reserves	All	R 60 000-00	

FOCUS AREA 4.2: ECO SCHOOLS / GLOBE / WORLD CONGRESS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Registration Fess	8 Schools - Fees to WESSA	All	R 2 000 - 00	2007/2008
Resources	Share-Net Schools Environmental Resources	All	R 1 000 - 00	2007/2008
WESSA Conference	Airfare and accommodation	All	R 5 000 - 00	
GLOBE Conference	Municipal contribution	All	R 50 000 - 00	
Special Days	Marine Week, River Week, Environment Week Etc.	All	R 10 000 - 00	
World Congress 2007	World Environmental Congress - Durban		R 15 000 - 00	

FOCUS AREA 4.3: RIVERS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Goukou River	Estuary Management Plan	1 and 3	R 30 000 - 00	2007/2008
	Income from Boat Licences		R 80 000 - 00	2007/2008
Duiwenhoks	Abe Pretorius - Contract / Seasonal Salary	3	R 40 000 - 00	
Slipway Registration	Application Fees	All	R 40 000 - 00	
Slipway Consultant	Ken Coetzee	All	R 20 000 - 00	
Boat Repairs / Maintenance	2 Municipal Boats	All	R 3 000 - 00	
Fuel	Petrol / Servicing	All	R 5 000 - 00	
By Law Printing Info Book	Information Booklet for boating and fishing	All	R 5 000 - 00	
Gourits River	Mr Myburgh - Contract / Seasonal salary Patrol	1	R 40 000 - 00	
Jetty Maintenance	On going Repairs To Jetties	All	R 20 000 - 00	





FOCUS AREA 4.4: ANIMAL PROTECTION SOCIETIES

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
HAPS	Hessequa Animal Welfare and Wildlife Rescue	All	R 70 000 - 00	2007/2008

FOCUS AREA 4.5: ENVIRONMENTAL CAPACITY BUILDING AND EMPLOYMENT PROJECTS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)
Slangrivier	Honorarium Louis Fielies	All	R 36 000 - 00
Slangrivier	Upgrading of Cemeteries	All	R 20 000 - 00
Slangrivier	On going Environmental Wetlands Project	All	R 30 000 - 00
Employment	Willem Roodman	All	R 48 000 - 00
Special Project	Kwanokuthula – Greening Initiative	8	R 20 000 - 00
Alien Eradication	Riversdale – Garcia Community Trust	7	R 20 000 - 00

FOCUS AREA 4.6: GENERAL PROJECTS AND 2007/8 FURTHER INITIATIVES

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)
Ministerial Visits / VIP	Conferences / Meetings / Accommodation dignitaries	All	R 10 000 - 00
Initiative 1	Melkhoutfontein Sustainable Livelihoods Phase One	1	R 20 000 - 00
Initiative 2	Slangrivier On going Greening Project	4	R 50 000 - 00
Initiative 3	WASTE RECYCLING PROJECT PHASE ONE	All	R100 000 - 00
Still Bay Natuurtuin	Die Brak / Natuurtuin / Access for blind and disabled	1	R 30 000 - 00





STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 5:
Strategic Investment in quality basic services and efficient 'connectivity infrastructure'
IDP CLUSTER 3:
Infrastructure

RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT: Technical Services

KEY FOCUS AREAS:

Focus Area 1: ROADS

Focus Area 2: STORM WATER AND KERBING

Focus Area 3: PARKS, OPEN SPACES, PARKING AREAS

Focus Area 4: RESORTS AND CAMPING SITES

Focus Area 5: MUNICIPAL BUILDING – LAND

FOCUS AREA 1: ROADS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Rehabilitation roads	Reconstruction of various roads in terms of Pavement Management Systems	1-8	Municipal budget – R3,146,900	1-5
Resealing of roads	Resealing of various roads in terms of Pavement Management systems	1-8	Municipal budget – R1,577,800	1-5
Paving of roads	Paving of gravel roads – labour intensive i.t.o. EPWP	1-8	Municipal budget – R2,000,000	1-5
Reconstruction of Eksteen Street, Heidelberg	Reconstruction and resealing of Eksteen Main Road in Heidelberg	5	PAWC Roads 80% Municipality 20% = R4,833,00	1-2





FOCUS AREA 2: STORM WATER AND KERBING

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Storm water Master plan	Complete Storm water Master plan in order to prioritise storm water needs in Hessequa	All	Municipal budget – R450,000	1
Upgrading of storm water systems	Construction and upgrading of ad-hoc storm water systems	All	Municipal budget – R150,000	1
Kerbing	The construction of kerb laying at existing tar roads	All	Municipal budget – R900,000	1-5
Culverts open channel – Riversdale	Design and planning	6	Municipal budget – R100,000	1-3

FOCUS AREA 3: PARKS AND OPEN SPACES, PARKING AREAS AND SIDE WALKS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Develop parks	Development of parks and recreation facilities	1-8	Municipal budget – R450,000	1-5
Parking areas	Upgrading of parking areas – EPWP (LED)	1-8	Municipal budget – R350,000	1-5
Parking areas	Construction of parking area – one stop traffic centre	8	Municipal budget – R100,000	1
Sidewalks	Upgrading of side walks – EPWP (LED)	1-5, 8	Municipal budget – R500,000	1-5

FOCUS AREA 4: RESORTS AND CAMP SITES

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Takkieskloof	Expansion of irrigation system	7	Municipal budget – R30,000	1-2
Middle camp – Witsand	Construction of kerbing storm water drains	4	Municipal budget – R70,000	1-3
Construction chalets Witsand	Construction of holiday chalets	4	Municipal budget – R750,000	2-5





Jongensfontein resort	Replace thatch roofs	3	Municipal budget – R40,000	1
Ellensrust camp site	Upgrading of camp	1	Municipal budget – R200,000	1-3
Preekstoel	Construction of chalets	1	Municipal budget – R400,000	1-5
	Upgrading of camp	1	Municipal budget – R1,078,000	1-5





FOCUS AREA 5: MUNICIPAL LAND AND BUILDINGS

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Heidelberg taxi rank	Construction of ablution block	5	Municipal budget – R120,000	1-2
Development of day camp Witsand	Upgrading of Witsand day camp	4	Municipal budget – R100,000	1-3
New offices – Head office, Riversdale	Construction of new office wing at head office, Riversdale	6-8	Municipal budget – R1,500,000	1-2
Conference facilities Takkieskloof	Construction of conference facilities on roof Takkieskloof ablution block	7	Municipal budget – R350,000	1
De Mist swimming pool	Upgrading of recreation facilities at De Mist swimming pool, Riversdale	6	Municipal budget – R230,000	1-3

RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT: Electro technical/Mechanical Department

KEY FOCUS AREAS:

Focus Area 1: Electrical

Focus Area 2: Mechanical (Equipment)

Focus Area 3: Mechanical (Vehicles)

FOCUS AREA 1: ELECTRICAL

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
H/T & Distribution Network Upgrading	Upgrading of networks to be able to supply electricity	1,2,3	External Loans	2007/2008 - 2010/2011
Low voltage conductors	Replacement of existing conductors	1,2,3	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2011/2012
11kV ring from MS Aalwyn – MS Industrial	New ring main	1,2,3	External Loan	2008/2009
11kV cable in Golf course	New cable to supplement supply	1,2,3	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
11kV cable From MS Power station to MS Station	Replace existing cable	1,2,3	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Electrical lighting at town entrance	Install new lights	1,2,3	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Upgrading of lighting at town entrance	Upgrade the existing lighting at the entrance to the town	1,2	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Upgrade house connections	Upgrade the existing house connections	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2010/2011
Lightning – N2	New lights install next to N2	5	External Loan	2008/2009 – 2010/2011
315 kV mini sub – Rainier Street	Install new Mini sub station	5	External Loan	2007/2008
Street lights upgrading	Upgrade of street lights to 70 watt	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2010/2011
Low voltage – Line guards	Upgrade the low voltage line guards	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2010/2012
Upgrading of low voltage lines	Upgrade of low voltage lines	5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2010-2011
Upgrade 22kV Main supply transformer	Upgrade the Main supply 22kV transformer to 2500kV	4	External Loan	2007/2008
Low voltage upgrading (Phase 4)	Upgrade low voltage	4	External loan	2007/2008
22kV Insulators	Install new 22kV insulators on 11kV lines	4	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2010/2012
Bypass for auto re-closures	Install bypasses at the auto re-closures on power lines	4	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Fault finder for 11kV lines	New fault finder for 11kv lines	4	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Replace overhead with underground lines	Replace existing overhead power lines with underground cables	4	External Loans	2007/2008 – 2010/2011
Low voltage & distribution network upgrading	Upgrade the existing low voltage and distribution networks	6,7	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2010/2011
Low voltage – Line guards	Upgrade the low voltage line guards	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Lighting rugby field	Upgrade and replace lighting at the rugby field	8	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Lighting N2	Replace lighting N2	6	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Oil Switch Pauw Sub Station	New Oil switch	6	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Upgrading distribution network	Upgrade existing distribution network	6,7,8	External Loans	2008/2009
Upgrade 11kV Sub station	Upgrade existing 11kV Sub Station	6	External Loans	2008/2009
Upgrade Church Street North and South Sub Station	Upgrade existing Sub Stations	6	External Loans	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Upgrade H/T distribution between SS-7b & SS-9	Upgrade existing High Tension power lines	3	External Loans	2007/2008
Upgrade H/T distribution between SS-10 & SS-11	Upgrade existing High Tension power lines	3	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Upgrade H/T distribution between Fynbos 1 & SS-17	Upgrade existing High Tension power lines	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Upgrade L/V feeder to kiosk 18/1	Upgrade existing Low voltage feeder lines	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Upgrade L/V Feeder to kiosk 14/6	Upgrade existing Low Voltage feeder lines	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Upgrade L/V distribution - Grysbok Avenue	Upgrade existing Low Voltage distribution lines	1	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Upgrade L/V distribution - Disa Avenue	Upgrade existing Low Voltage distribution lines	3	External Loans	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Upgrade L/V distribution - Church Street	Upgrade existing Low Voltage distribution lines	1	External Loans	2008/2009 – 2009/2010
Upgrade L/V distribution - Koraal Street	Upgrade existing Low Voltage distribution lines	3	External Loans	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Installation of 66/11 kV Main Sub Station	Installation of new Main Sub Station	1	External Loans	2007/2008 – 2009/2010
Flood lights at Melkhoutfontein entrance	Erect new floodlights at entrance to Melkhoutfontein	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2008/2009





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Upgrading of the reticulation network Jetty to SS-2	Upgrade of existing reticulation	3	External Loan	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Upgrading Low Voltage cables SS-5	Upgrade of existing Low voltage cables	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Lighting of Poort/Informal Housing	Light up area	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Upgrade network	Upgrade of existing network	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2008/2009
Replace Distribution equipment	Replace existing obsolete distribution equipment	1	External Loan	2007/2008 – 2010/2011
Cable and Fault finder L/V	New equipment	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Cable and Fault finder H/T	New equipment	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Upgrade 11kV network	Upgrade existing network	H/Q	External Loan	2011/2012
Upgrade low voltage network	Upgrade existing network	H/Q	External Loan	2011/2012
Street Lights	Replace existing street lights	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2010-2011
-Albertinia	Replace existing street lights	2	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
-Heidelberg	Replace existing street lights	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
-Witsand	Replace existing street lights	4	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
-Riversdale	Replace existing street lights	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
-Stilbaai	Replace existing street lights	1,3	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
-Gouritsmond	Replace existing street lights	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Electrification Low Cost Housing	Electrification of Council's low cost housing areas	H/Q	External Loan	2008/2009 - 2011/2012
Electrification new housing projects	Electrification of new housing projects	1,2	NEP	2007/2008 – 2011/2012





FOCUS AREA 2: MECHANICAL (EQUIPMENT)

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
High Pressure Jet – Sewage	New equipment	2	Capital replacement reserve	2010/2011
Power rodder - Sewage	New equipment	2	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Mechanical Sieve - Sewage	New equipment	2	Capital replacement reserve	2011/2012
Kerb cutter - Public Works	New equipment	2	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Kudu Lawn Mower - Parks	New equipment	2	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Scaffold equipment for community hall - Buildings	New equipment	2	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Wacker – Public Works	New equipment	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Kudu Lawn mower - Parks	New equipment	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Mechanical Sieve - Sewage	New equipment	5	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
Power rodder - Sewage	New equipment	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
High Pressure Jet – Sewage	New equipment	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Canon Type irrigation sprinkler system – Sport field	New equipment	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Kerb cutter - Electricity	New equipment	4	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Blower mover – Public Works	New equipment	4	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
Wood Chipper – Public Works	New equipment	4	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Kudu Lawn mower	New equipment	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Canon type irrigation sprinkler system - Riverville	New equipment	6,8	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Blower mower - Parks	New equipment	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
Chippy chip spreader,	New equipment	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 –





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Public Works				2011/2012
Roller type broom – Public Works	New equipment	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2010/2011
Tar cutter – Public Works	New equipment	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2009/2010
Welder generator - Electricity	New equipment	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Wacker – public Works/ Electricity	New equipment	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2011/2012
Generator 7,2 kVA - Electricity	New equipment	1,3	Capital replacement reserve	2010/2011
High Pressure jet - Sewage	New equipment	3	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2011/2012
Kudu Lawn Mower - Parks	New equipment	3	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
Wood Chipper – Public Works	New equipment	3	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
Compactor – Public Works	New equipment	1	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
Kudu Lawn Mower – Public Works	New equipment	1	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2011/2012
Generator 5,5 kVA	New equipment	4	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Front end loading bucket for tractor – Public Works	New equipment	4	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Bomag roller – Public Works	New equipment	4,5	Insurance	2007/2008

FOCUS AREA 3: Mechanical (Vehicles)

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
4x4 LAW – Water/Sewage/Parks	New vehicle	2	External Loan	2007/2008 – 2011/2012
1 ton trailer Refuse/Public	Replace Existing Vehicle	2	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 –





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Works/Water				2011/2012
TLB Vehicle – Public Works	New vehicle	2	External Loan	2007/2008
5m ³ Tipper truck – Public Works	New vehicle	2	External Loan	2010/2011
Fiat Tractor 780 – Public Works	New vehicle	2	External Loan	2009/2010 – 2011/2012
Water cart 2000L – Public Works	Replace Existing Vehicle	2	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008
LAW – Water/Electrical/Parks	Replace Existing Vehicle	5	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2011/2012
5m ³ Tipper truck – Public Works	New vehicle	4,5	External Loan	2009/2010 – 2011/2012
Fiat Tractor 780 – Public Works	Replace Existing Vehicle	4,5	Capital replacement reserve	2008,2009 – 2011/2012
Suction Tanker (Honey Sucker)- Sewage	New vehicle	4	External Loan	2008/2009
LAW – Parks/Public Works	Replace Existing Vehicle	4	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2010/2011
5m ³ Tipper truck – Public Works	New vehicle	6,7,8	External Loan	2010/2011
LAW - Buildings	Replace Existing Vehicle	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
4x4 LAW - Electrical	New vehicle	6,7,8	External loan	2007/2008
LAW - Electrical	Replace Existing Vehicle	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2007/2008 – 2011/2012
Trailer for equipment - Electricity	Replace Existing Vehicle	6,7,8	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Cherry Picker - Electricity	New vehicle	6,7,8	External loan	2008/2009
Terrain compactor - Sanitation	New vehicle	7,8	External loan	2008/2009 – 2009/2010
LAW – Sewage/Water	Replace Existing Vehicle	8	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009 – 2011/2012





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Vehicle - Community Safety	Replace Existing Vehicle	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2011/2012
5m ³ Tipper truck – Public Works	New vehicle	1,3	External loan	2008/2009 – 2011/2012
125cc Motor bike - Electrical	Replace Existing Vehicle	1,3	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
Suction Tanker (Honey Sucker)- Sewage	Replace Existing Vehicle	3	Capital replacement reserve	2010
Water cart 2000L – Public Works	Replace Existing Vehicle	4	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
Mobile compressor – Public Works	New vehicle	H/Q	External loan	2009/2010
5 ton crane truck - electrical	New vehicle	H/Q	External loan	2007/2008
10 ton low bed trailer – Public Works	Replace Existing Vehicle	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2009/2010
3x Fire Engine trailers	Replace Existing Vehicle	H/Q	Capital replacement reserve	2008/2009
Refuse Compactor	New vehicle	H/Q	External loan	2008/2009 – 2011/2012

RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT: Technical

KEY FOCUS AREAS:

Focus Area 1: Water

Focus Area 2: Sewage

Focus Area 3: Sanitation

FOCUS AREA 1: WATER

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Replacement of Mainlines: Phase 2	Upgrading of old water infrastructure: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R150 000	2007/2008





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Irrigation waterline – Town Entrance	Install irrigation waterline at the town entrance: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R45 000	2007/2008
Borehole pump	Spare bore hole pump: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R40 000	2007/2008
Rehabilitation of fountain	Rehabilitation of dam wall around fountain: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R20 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of water infrastructure and rehabilitation of dam wall around fountain	Upgrading of water pipelines: Oosdorp: Heidelberg	4/5	Capital Budget – R195 000	2007/2008
Borehole pump	Spare borehole pump: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R20 000	2007/2008
Replacement of air valves pump control	Replacement of old air valves at strategic places: Still Bay	1/3	Capital Budget – R30 000	2007/2008
Telemetry and pump control	Replacement of old telemetry system in order to control water pumps: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R25 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of water infrastructure	Replacement of old cast-iron connections on waterlines: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R200 000	2007/2008
Telemetry System	Installing of new telemetry system for the control of water pumps: Jongensfontein	3	Capital Budget – R30 000	2007/2008
Replacement of reservoir roof	Replacement of old roof of the existing reservoir with a new one: Slangrivier	4	Capital Budget – R90 000	2007/2008
Air valves	Replacement of old water air valves: Slangrivier	4	Capital Budget – R9 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of waterworks	Upgrading of existing water purification works: Albertinia	2	Priority Funding: EDC – R2 100 000	2007/2008
Supply of water	Upgrading of the water supply: Albertinia	2	MIG Funding – R395 000	2007/2008
Reservoir and Pump line Platbos	New water reservoir and main water pipeline to Platbos as a result of the Still Bay Duine Development	1/3	Public Funding – R3 000 000	2007/2008
Telemetry system	Install new telemetry system for the control of water pumps: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R140 000	2008/2009
Replacement of main waterlines	Phase 2 of replacing old water infrastructure: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R200 00	2008/2009





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Upgrading of water treatment works	Installing a colour removal system at the waterworks: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R500 000	2008/2009
Irrigation system for town entrance	Irrigation system to town entrance: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R50 000	2008/2009
Spare borehole pump	Spare borehole pump: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R45 000	2008/2009
Rehabilitation of fountain	Rehabilitation of dam wall around fountain: Phase 2: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R80 000	2008/2009
New water reservoir	Building of a new water reservoir to enlarge water storage capacity: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R500 000	2008/2009
Upgrading of water infrastructure	Upgrading of old water pipelines: Heidelberg	4/5	Capital Budget – R100 000	2008/2009
Spare Borehole pump	Spare borehole pump: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R25 000	2008/2009
New water reservoir	New water reservoir to increase water storage capacity: Riversdale	6/8	Capital Budget – R283 000	2008/2009
Replacement of old water infrastructure	Replacement of old water infrastructure: Riversdale	6	Capital Budget – R300 000	2008/2009
Replacement of old water air valves	Replace old water air valves on waterlines: Still Bay	1/3	Capital Budget – R50 000	2008/2009
New reservoir and main waterline	Phase 2 of building a new reservoir and pipeline to Platbos as a result of the Still Bay Duine Development	1	Capital Budget – R2 000 000	2008/2009
Supply of water	Supply of water to Blikhuis: Melkhoutfontein	1/3	Capital Budget – R100 000	2008/2009
New Reservoir	Building of a new reservoir to increase water storage capacity: Jongensfontein	3	Capital Budget – R1 500 000	2008/2009
Replacement of roof of reservoir	Replace existing old roof of reservoir: Slangrivier	4	Capital Budget – R90 000	2008/2009
New Reservoir	New reservoir to increase water storage capacity: Heidelberg	4/5	MIG Funding – R2 796 000	2008/2009
Supply of water: Section 10 + 11	Investigation to comply to section 10 + 11: Hessequa	2	Priority Funding:EDC – R400 000	2008/2009
Telemetry system for	Phase 2 of upgrading the telemetry system	2	Capital Budget – R140 000	2009/2010





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
control of water pumps	for the control of water pumps: Albertinia			
Replacement of old water infrastructure	Phase 2 of replacing old water infrastructure: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R200 000	2009/2010
Upgrading of water treatment works	Installing a colour removal system for the treatment of water: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R500 000	2009/2010
Spare borehole pump	Spare borehole pump as standby: Albertinia	4/5	Capital Budget – R50 000	2009/2010
Upgrading of old water infrastructure	Replacing old water infrastructure: Heidelberg	4	Capital Budget – R100 000	2009/2010
Spare borehole pump	Spare borehole pump as standby: Witsand	6	Capital Budget – R25 000	2009/2010
Upgrading of water infrastructure	Phase 2 of replacing existing old water infrastructure: Riversdale	6/8	Capital Budget – R300 000	2009/2010
Spare water pump	Spare water pump: Riversdale	6/8	Capital Budget – R15 000	2009/2010
Wacker Trench Compacter	Supply compacter for compacting trenches: Riversdale	7	Capital Budget – R10 000	2009/2010
Water valves for main waterline	Replace old water valves on the main water supply line from weir: Riversdale	7	Capital Budget – R15 000	2009/2010
Water valves	Phase 3 of the replacement of water valves: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R50 000	2009/2010
Supply of water: Blikhuis	Phase 2 of the supply of water to Blikhuis: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R100 000	2009/2010
New reservoir	New reservoir to increase the water storage capacity: Heidelberg	2	MIG Funding – R2 311 000	2009/2010
Telemetry System	Phase 3 for telemetry system for the control of water pumps: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R150 000	2010/2011
Replacement of main waterlines	Phase 3 of replacing old water infrastructure: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R220 000	2010/2011
Upgrading of water treatment works	Phase 3 of installing a colour removal system at the waterworks: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R750 000	2010/2011
Spare borehole pump	Spare borehole pump: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R55 000	2010/2011
Rehabilitation of fountain	Rehabilitation of dam wall around fountain: Phase 3: Albertinia	4/5	Capital Budget – R100 000	2010/2011





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Upgrading of water infrastructure	Upgrading of old water pipelines: Heidelberg	4	Capital Budget – R100 000	2010/2011
Security Fencing: Reservoir	Upgrading of security fencing around the reservoir: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R120 000	2010/2011
Spare borehole pump	Spare borehole pump: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R28 000	2010/2011
Chlorine Facility	Erecting a chlorinating facility: Witsand	6	Capital Budget – R90 000	2010/2011
Replacement of old water infrastructure	Replacement of old water infrastructure: Riversdale	7,8	Capital Budget – R400 000	2010/2011
Replacement of old water valves	Replace water air valves on waterlines: Still Bay	1,3	Capital Budget – R50 000	2010/2011
New reservoir and main waterline	Phase 3 of building a new reservoir and pipeline to Platbos as a result of the Still Bay Duine Development	1	Capital Budget – R2 500 000	2010/2011
Supply of water	New water infrastructure for Housing Project Heidelberg	4	MIG Funding – R995 297	2010/2011
New reservoir	New reservoir to increase water storage capacity: Witsand	4	MIG Funding – R2 026 000	2010/2011
Upgrading of water supply	Upgrading of water supply to support development: Witsand	4	MIG Funding – R6 000 000	2010/2011
New reservoir	New reservoir to increase water storage capacity: Riversdale	6,8	MIG Funding – R2 500 000	2010/2011
Upgrading of water infrastructure	Upgrading of water infrastructure supplying Slangrivier	4	Priority Funding: EDC – R2 000 000	2010/2011
Supply of water	New water infrastructure for Housing Project: Slangrivier	4 ⁴	MIG Funding – R1 773 900	2010/2011
Telemetry system for control of water pumps	Phase 4 of upgrading the telemetry system for the control of water pumps: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R160 000	2011/20012
Spare borehole pump	Spare borehole pump: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R60 000	2011/20012
Rehabilitation of fountain	Rehabilitation of dam wall around fountain: Phase 4: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R110 000	2011/20012
Supply of water	Upgrading the supply of water: Boreholes/Fountains: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R850 000	2011/20012





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Spare Borehole pump	Spare borehole pump: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R31 000	2011/20012
Upgrading chlorinating facility	Upgrade chlorinating facility: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R15 000	2011/20012
Upgrading of water infrastructure	Phase 4 of upgrading old water infrastructure: Riversdale	6,8	Capital Budget – R500 000	2011/20012
Spare water pump	Spare water pump: Riversdale	7	Capital Budget – R50 000	2011/20012
Replacement of water valve	Replace old water valves on main water pipeline from Weir: Riversdale	6-8	Capital Budget – R50 000	2011/20012
Replacement of old water valves	Phase 5 of replacement of water air valves at strategic places: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R50 000	2011/20012
New reservoir	New reservoir to increase water storage capacity: Witsand	4	MIG Funding – R2 500 000	2011/20012
New reservoir	New reservoir to increase water capacity: Riversdale	6,8	MIG Funding – R2 000 000	2011/20012
Supply of water	New water infrastructure for Housing project: Slangrivier	4	MIG Funding –R2 000 000	2011/20012

FOCUS AREA 2: SEWERAGE

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Fencing of oxidation sewage oxidation ponds	Supply of fencing around sewage oxidation ponds: Albertinia	2	Capital Budget – R60 000	2007/2008
Standby sewage pump	Supply of standby sewage pump: Heidelberg	4,5	Capital Budget – R60 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of sewage pipeline	Upgrading of sewage pipeline: Kwanukuthula	6	Capital Budget – R100 00	2007/2008
Upgrading of main sewage pipeline	Upgrading of main sewage pipeline: Ward 6: Riversdale	6	Capital Budget – R500 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of sewage pump station	Supply of new sewage pump for pump station 1: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R90 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of security	Security fencing around oxidation ponds:	1	Capital Budget – R130 000	2007/2008





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
fencing: Oxidation Pond	Melkhoutfontein			
Upgrading of office at Sewage Works	Extension of existing laboratory facility: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R70 000	2007/2008
Secure sewage pipeline at harbour	Sewage pipeline to be secured on beach at Harbour: Still Bay	1	Capital Budget – R300 000	2007/2008
Sludge pump	Supply of sludge pump: Hessequa	2	Capital Budget – R20 000	2007/2008
Sewage reticulation system	Installing sewage infrastructure for rest of town: Albertinia	2	Priority Funding: EDC – R2 400 000	2007/2008
Supply of bulk sewage infrastructure	Bulk sewage infrastructure for Housing Project: Albertinia	4,5	MIG Funding – R706 000	2007/2008
Supply of bulk sewage infrastructure	Bulk sewage infrastructure for rest of town: Heidelberg	4,5	Priority Funding: EDC – R2 100 000	2007/2008
Replacement of sewage treatment works	Reallocating the existing treatment works: Heidelberg	4,5	Rampfonds – R15 000 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of existing oxidation ponds	Phase 2 of upgrading existing sewage oxidation ponds: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R300 000	2007/2008
Supply of sewage infrastructure	Installing new sewage infrastructure at Church grounds: Melkhoutfontein	1	Priority Funding: EDC – R1 000 000	2007/2008
Upgrading of existing sewage bulk infrastructure	Upgrading bulk sewage infrastructure: Still Bay	1	EDC – R3 200 000	2007/2008
Supply of bulk sewage infrastructure	Bulk sewage infrastructure for Housing Project: Bitouville: Gouritsmond	1	Capital Budget – R986 880	2007/2008
Eradication of bucket system	Eradicating bucket system: Heidelberg	5	MIG Funding – R1 340 000	2007/2008
Security Fencing: Oxidation Ponds	Phase 2 of erecting security fencing around sewage oxidation ponds: Albertinia	4,5	Capital Budget – R40 000	2008/2009
Supply of bulk sewage	Bulk sewage infrastructure for rest of town:	4	Capital Budget – R500 000	2008/2009





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
infrastructure	Heidelberg			
Upgrading of sewage oxidation ponds	Phase 3 of extending existing sewage oxidation ponds: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R700 000	2008/2009
Extending sewage bulk infrastructure	Extending the existing sewage bulk infrastructure: Jongensfontein	3	Capital Budget – R1 000 000	2008/2009
Supply of sewage bulk infrastructure	Phase 1 of installing gravitation sewage bulk infrastructure: Gouritsmond	1	Capital Budget – R800 000	2008/2009
New sewage system	Install new sewage drainage system in caravan park: Gouritsmond	1	Capital Budget – R50 000	2008/2009
New sludge pump	Supply of new sludge pump: Hessequa	H/Q	Capital Budget – R15 000	2008/2009
Supply of camera for inspection of sewage lines	Camera for inspection of sewage pipelines	2	Capital Budget – R125 000	2008/2009
Replacement of existing old sewer pipeline	Upgrading/replacement of sewage pipeline: Braak: Albertinia	2	EDC – R450 000	2008/2009
Installing sewage bulk infrastructure	New sewage infrastructure for Church grounds: Melkhoutfontein	1	EDC – R1 100 000	2008/2009
Standby sewage pump	Supply of standby sewage pump: Heidelberg	4,5	Capital Budget – R60 000	2009/2010
Install sewage bulk infrastructure	Installing of bulk sewage infrastructure for rest of town: Heidelberg	5	Capital Budget – R600 000	2009/2010
Sludge pump	Supply of standby sludge pump for sewage treatment works: Riversdale	6,8	Capital Budget – R30 000	2009/2010
Extension of sewage bulk infrastructure	Phase 2 of extending gravitation sewage system: Jongensfontein	3	Capital Budget – R1 000 000	2009/2010
Extension of sewage system Standby sludge pump	Phase 2 of extending gravitation sewage system: Gouritsmond	1	Capital Budget – R1 300 000	2009/2010
Replacement of sewage pipeline	Supply of standby sludge pump: Hessequa	H/Q	Capital Budget – R15 000	2009/2010
Extending of sewage	Upgrading of sewage pipeline: Braak:	2	EDC – R500 000	2009/2010





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
system	Albertinia			
Extending sewage infrastructure	Extending sewage system for rest of town: Heidelberg	4,5	EDC – R2 000 000	2009/2010
Sludge pump	Extending sewage system for rest of town: Heidelberg	H/Q	Capital Budget – R650 000	2010/2011
Extension of sewage bulk infrastructure	Supply of sludge pump: Hessequa	H/Q	Capital Budget – R30 000	2010/2011
Extension of sewage bulk infrastructure	Phase 3 of extending gravitation system: Jongensfontein	3	Capital Budget – R1 500 000	2010/2011
Sludge pump	Phase 3 of extending gravitation system: Gouritsmond	1	Capital Budget – R500 000	2010/2011
Supply of bulk sewage infrastructure	Supply of standby sludge pump: Hessequa	4,5	Capital Budget – R16 000	2010/2011
Upgrading of sewage oxidation ponds	Bulk infrastructure for Housing Project: Heidelberg	4	MIG Funding – R753 210	2010/2011
Upgrading of sewage treatment works	Extending of existing sewage oxidation ponds: Witsand	4	EDC – R1 500 000	2010/2011
Upgrading of sewage pump stations	Report of Kwezi V3: Upgrading of treatment works: Still Bay	1,3	MIG Funding – R2 500 000	2010/2011
Installing new sewage bulk infrastructure	Upgrading of pump stations: Still Bay	1,3	MIG Funding – R1 800 000	2010/2011
	Sewage bulk infrastructure for Housing Project: Slangrivier	4	MIG Funding – R1 773 900	2010/2011
Extension of sewage gravitation system	Phase 4 of installing gravitation system: Jongensfontein Phase 4 of installing gravitation system: Extension of sewage gravitation system Gouritsmond	1,3	Capital Budget – R1 500 000	2011/2012
Extension of sewage oxidation ponds	Phase 3 of upgrading sewage oxidation ponds: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R400 000	2011/2012
Upgrading of sewage	Upgrading sewage pump stations: Still Bay	1,3	EDC – R2 000 000	2011/2012





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
pump stations			MIG Funding – R1 200 000	

FOCUS AREA 3: SANITATION

PROJECT/Programme	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Fencing of landfill site	Security fencing around landfill site: Heidelberg	4	Capital Budget – R50 000	2007/2008
New landfill site/Closing of site	New landfill site for Melkhoutfontein/Hessequa	H/Q	EDC - R 500 000	2007/2008
Fencing of landfill site	Security fencing around landfill site: Heidelberg	4	Capital Budget – R70 000	2008/2009
Waste Transfer station	Waste transfer station for Jongensfontein	3	Capital Budget – R50 000	2008/2009
Additional cells for waste	Upgrading landfill site with additional cells for waste: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R500 000	2009/2010
Waste transfer station	Transfer station for waste: Jongensfontein	3	Capital Budget – R250 000	2009/2010
Additional cells for waste	Upgrading landfill site with additional cells for waste: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R 500 000	2010/2011
Upgrading of security fencing at Landfill site	Upgrading of existing fence around landfill site: Heidelberg	5	Capital Budget – R100 000	2011/2012
Additional cells for waste	Phase 3 of upgrading landfill site with additional cells: Witsand	4	Capital Budget – R500 000	2011/2012





STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 6:

Create an enabling social environment that ensures safe, healthy and vibrant communities.

IDP CLUSTER 2:

Socio-Economic Development

RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENTS: Development Planning, Economic & Social Development

KEY FOCUS AREAS: Sosio-Economic Development

Focus Area 1: Sustainable Human Settlements (Housing)

Focus Area 2: Agriculture

Focus Area 3: Tourism

FOCUS AREA 1: SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS (HOUSING)

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Sustainable human settlements – Albertinia and Gouritsmond	The provision of sustainable human settlements in Albertinia (420) and Gouritsmond (60)	1&2	R7 101 000 (provincial allocation-2007/2008)	2007/2008
Sustainable human settlements – Melkhoutfontein / Stilbaai	The provision of sustainable human settlements in Melkhoutfontein and Stilbaai	1&3	R9 080 000 (provincial allocation-2008/2009(mtef outer year allocation)	2008/2009
Sustainable human settlements – Heidelberg	The provision of sustainable human settlements in Heidelberg	4&5	R11 100 000 (provincial allocation-2009/2010(mtef outer year allocation)	2009/2010
Sustainable human settlements – Slangrivier	The provision of sustainable human settlements in Slangrivier	4	No allocation as yet	2010/2011
Upgrade of informal settlements	The provision of rudimentary services in informal settlements	All wards	No allocation as yet(priority funding from Eden District Municipality)	2007/2011





FOCUS AREA 2: AGRICULTURE

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Re-institute Agricultural Advisory Committee and integrate activities with other advisory committees	Develop a body to lead the planning of future agriculture in Hessequa Committee established and integrated	All	To be determined	July 2007
Broad-based strategic planning for the agricultural sector (including diversification and value addition)	To develop a strategic plan for the next 5 years Plan finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	To be determined	December 2007
Land ownership in Hessequa	To develop a strategic plan for the next 5 years Plan finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	To be determined	December 2007
BBBEE in Hessequa agriculture	To develop a regional sectoral charter for the next 5 years Charter finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	To be determined	March 2008
Social contract in Hessequa agriculture	Develop a new social contract Plan finalized after stakeholder interactions		To be determined	June 2008
Rural Development Initiative	Integrated rural development and service delivery Appointment of Rural Development Officer		To be determined	June 2008





FOCUS AREA 3: TOURISM

PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
Create a Tourism Forum/Advisory Committee and integrate activities with other forums/advisory committees	Develop a body to lead the planning of future tourism in Hessequa Committee established and integrated	All	R20 000	October 2007
Complete the strategic plan for tourism in Hessequa	To develop a strategic plan for the next 3 years Plan finalized after stakeholder interactions	All	R20 000 plus funds supplied by Eden District municipality	May 2007
BBBEE in Hessequa tourism	To develop a regional sectoral charter for the next 5 years Charter finalized after stakeholder interactions, BEE scorecard implemented	All	R60 000	March 2008
Public access to Hessequa coast	Ensure that the coastline of Hessequa is available for tourist access Plan for public access finalized after stakeholder interactions	1,3,4	R20 000	June 2008
Keystone project Archaeological Interpretation Centre in Riversdale	Create major new tourist attraction Implementation plan developed		R200 000 from Hessequa municipality for next planning phase	End of 2009
Structure to manage integrated tourism and	Ensure effective tourist information about Hessequa	All	R180 000	June 2008





PROJECT/PROGRAMME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	WARD/S	RESOURCES (BUDGET)	IDP YEAR
reorganisation of information offices	Plan for Western Gateway, Plan for future of present information offices, creation of Section 21 Company			
Branding and marketing of Hessequa	Build Hessequa Identity and market the region Identity established and marketing plans being implemented	All	R280 000	June 2008
Focused support	Provision of support necessary to expand tourism industry Support for: Events, specific segments, township and informal tourism, upgrading infrastructure	All	R460 000	June 2008
Special activities	Additional support to tourism industry Completion of applied research, provision of better statistics, support of Hessequa Development Agency, Cooperation with Eden District Municipality and CTRU, Department of Economic Development and	All	R160 000	June 2008





CHAPTER 18: SUMMARY AND CONCLUDING REMARKS

Conclusion and remarks: Deputy Mayor:

As you read this message we are on the verge of a cultural shift – not only in Hessequa but across this extraordinary planet of ours. We are at a crossroads where communities everywhere are recognising our interconnectedness and accepting that we are responsible for our own local and global well-being, the state of our local and global economy, social fabric, governance and our environment.



The combined efforts of this community and municipality, led by this council, have through many public engagements developed a shared vision of the future. This process has culminated in an IDP which reflects the needs and the dreams of the people of Hessequa.

It is the role of council to provide leadership and be the voice of the people. It is the role of this municipality to provide effective efficient infrastructure and services to the community as our primary function.

As we move into a developmental state, challenged by the effects of climate change, consumerism, the ever widening gap between the have and the have-nots, poverty and globalisation as well as the continuing legacies of a divided past, this organisation realises that it must adapt and be transformed to respond to the full spectrum of community and environmental needs.

Through our IDP, we therefore take on the broader responsibility of governance, as an agent for sustainable economic development, social development and environmentally sustainable growth. This document is a roadmap towards the future which this community would like to construct. It sets targets towards a sustainable future where everyone who lives here now and in the future will be able to share equally in the bounty of this region. It will be a journey into uncharted territory which will take courage and the involvement of all our citizens. The anthropologist Margaret Mead stated:

“Never doubt that a small group of thoughtful, committed citizens can change the world. Indeed it is the only thing that ever has”

On behalf of this council I pledge today that the Hessequa Municipality will serve the people of our region, be a driver of innovation, responsive to the needs of all our citizens, ensuring affordable, efficient and reliable services which are fully transparent, accountable and demonstrate zero-tolerance towards corruption.

Visionary thinking and action from our community is a prerequisite if we are to realise our twenty year vision and an integrated prosperous society. The question is: What are you going to do to help this community make its dreams come true?

Lorna Scott

Executive Deputy Mayor of Hessequa



ANNEXURE

SUMMARY OF STATE OF THE NATION ADDRESS OF THE PRESIDENT OF SOUTH AFRICA, THABO MBEKI: JOINT SITTING OF PARLIAMENT: 9 FEBRUARY 2007

The address focused on:

1. THE ECONOMY

At an average of over 4,5%, the rate of growth of our economy over the past two and half years has been at its highest since we attained our democracy in 1994. Investment in the economy, by both the public and private sectors has been increasing at about 11%, with overall public sector infrastructure spending increasing by an annual average of 15,8%. Today, fixed investment as a percentage of Gross Domestic Product – at about 18,4% – is at its highest since 1991.

2. EMPLOYMENT

The number of employed people has been increasing at about half-a-million a year in the past 3 years.

3. BEE

We have seen steady progress in the advancement of Black people in the economy.

4. FINANCE

The advances in the economy have thrown up major challenges for all of us. The massive and sustained increase in consumer demand reflects a healthy growth in levels of prosperity across the population; and the major infrastructure projects that we are embarking on demand massive input of supplies and machinery.

But our international **trade balance** shows that we have not succeeded in building the capacity to produce the consumer and capital goods that our country needs. While household debt has increased broadly at the same rate as growth in income, the fact that South Africans are saving less means that we have to depend on savings from other nations. The continuing occasional volatility of our currency has also not boded well for our export industries.

5. JOB CREATION

Over the past three years, the economy has created some one-and-half million jobs. It is encouraging that in the year March 2005 to March 2006 alone, 300 000 of the jobs created were in the formal sector outside of agriculture, representing a growth rate of about 4%.

A small part of these are the permanent job opportunities created through the **Expanded Public Works Programme**. But there is no question that this Programme can and must be ratcheted upwards quite significantly. There is also no question that we can do much





better to create self-employment through small and micro-enterprises. And given that a large majority of the unemployed are youth, we can do much better in terms of such interventions as the National Youth Service and the development of young entrepreneurs.

6. A CARING SOCIETY AND HOUSING

We have since 2004 improved service provision and other aspects of the social wage. While beneficiaries of social grants numbered about 8 million in 2004, today 11 million poor South Africans have access to these grants. It is encouraging that the rates of increase in uptake have, in the recent period, been within manageable ranges, as the Programmes reach maturity. This will ensure sustainability, and employment of more government resources to provide economic services to create more jobs and business opportunities.

The **housing Programme** has seen close to **300 000 new subsidies allocated in the past two years**. However, as we sought to improve quality and develop plans for those who are being missed by the public and private sector Programmes currently under way, the pace of roll-out has been much slower than we expected. We must act to change this situation.

7. PASSENGER TRANSPORT

We have over the past few years developed and started implementing various Programmes aimed at improving passenger transport. These include the taxi recapitalisation Programme and provincial initiatives such as the Moloto Rail Corridor in Mpumalanga around which feasibility work has started the Klipfontein Corridor in Cape Town and the Gautrain project with its linkages to the rest of the public transport system.

These and many other initiatives form part of a comprehensive passenger transport strategy, combining both road and rail. We will attend to the urgent implementation of these Programmes to improve the quality of life of especially the working people.

8. ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY, WATER AND SANITATION

Access to electricity, water and sanitation has improved. By 2005, South Africa had already achieved the Millennium Development Goal in respect of basic water supply, with improvement of access from 59% in 1994 to 83% in 2006. According to the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP), South Africa is one of the few countries that spend less on military budgets than on water and sanitation. In the words of the UNDP Human Development Report of 2006:

“... South Africa has demonstrated how the human right to water can serve as a mechanism for empowerment and a guide to policy... Rights-based water reform has enabled it to expand access and overcome the legacy of racial inequality inherited from apartheid, partly through rights-based entitlements”. (pp62/63)

We should indeed celebrate this great achievement. But it is a fact that 8 million people are still without potable water. Many more are without electricity and sanitation. We are proud that within one year, we have been able to reduce the backlog in the





eradication of the bucket system in established settlements by almost half. We are on course to put an end to this dehumanising system in these areas by the end of this year.

We will continue to confront these challenges so as to erase in our country that which is ugly and repulsive so that together we can speak of freedom and the happiness that comes with liberty.

9. EDUCATION AND SKILLS

An examination of education and skills acquisition shows improvement of quite a high base by 2004, though at a slow pace. This applies to literacy levels, gross school enrolment and tertiary participation rates. The fluctuating Matric pass rates do indicate that much more needs to be done to stabilise the system and ensure steady improvement. At the same time, the number of Matric students who pass Mathematics at the higher grade is only slightly better than in 1995. We also continue to show weaknesses in implementing the Adult Basic Education Programme.

10. THE LAND RESTITUTION PROGRAMME

While the land restitution Programme has resulted in more settlements in the recent period, we still need to put in extra effort in dealing with remaining cases, many of which are much more complex. On the other hand, very little progress has been made in terms of land redistribution. We will undertake a careful review of the inhibiting factors so that this Programme is urgently speeded up.

11. STRATEGIES TO REDUCE AND ERADICATE POVERTY

All these economic and social Programmes form part of our strategies to reduce and eradicate the poverty. We must among other things:

- Define clearly the poverty matrix of our country;
- Develop a proper database of households living in poverty;
- Identify and implement specific interventions relevant to these households;
- Monitor progress in these households as the Programmes take effect in graduating them out of poverty;
- In this context, address all indigence, especially the high numbers of women so affected;
- Co-ordinate and align all anti-poverty Programmes to maximise impact and avoid wastage and duplication; and,
- Accelerate the training of Family Social Workers at professional and auxiliary levels to ensure that identified households are properly supported and monitored.

This will ensure the systematic linkage of beneficiaries of social assistance to municipal services and work opportunities, continuously focused on the task to ensure that as many of our people as possible graduate out of dependence on social grants and enter the labour market. In the meantime, we will continue to explore new initiatives which will progressively improve the social wage.



A critical leg of these social interventions should be the intensification of joint efforts among all South Africans to improve social cohesion.

In other words, measures required to improve social cohesion cannot be undertaken by government alone. We must together as South Africans speak of freedom from want and from moral decay, and work to attain the happiness that comes with it.

12. SAFETY AND SECURITY

Certainly, we cannot erase that which is ugly and repulsive and claim the happiness that comes with freedom if communities live in fear, closeted behind walls and barbed wire, ever anxious in their houses, on the streets and on our roads, unable freely to enjoy our public spaces. Obviously, we must continue and further intensify the struggle against crime.

While we have already surpassed that targeted figure of 152 000 police officers employed in the South African Police Service, and while we have improved the training Programme, we recognise the fact that the impact of this is not yet high enough for everybody to feel a better sense of safety and security. While we have reduced the incidence of most contact crimes, the annual reduction rate with regard to such categories as robbery, assault and murder is still below the 7-10% that we had targeted. And the abuse of women and children continues at an unacceptable level.

The increase in the incidence of particular crimes during the security workers' strike should have brought home to all of us the fact that the security industry cannot be handled simply as a private affair of the private sector. Quite clearly the regulatory system that we have in place is inadequate. This applies to such issues as wage levels, personnel vetting systems, enforcement of guidelines on cash-delivery vehicles, and so on.

This is a matter that we shall review during the course of the year, so that, in addition to improving the work of the police, we can together with the private security industry create an environment in which the security expectations of the public, in which huge resources are expended, are actually met.

We will also continue to put more effort into improving the functioning of our courts, to increase the rate of reduction in case backlogs. And we will ensure that decisions to expand the Correctional Services infrastructure, improve the management of Border Control as well as the immigration and documentation services, among others, are implemented.

13. CAPACITY OF THE STATE

Many of the weaknesses in improving services to the population derive in part from inadequate capacity and systems to monitor implementation. As such, in the period leading up to 2009, the issue of the organisation and capacity of the state will remain high on our agenda.

What has emerged, among others, as a critical area for strategic intervention is the content of training which public servants receive in various institutions and the role of the





SA Management Development Institute (SAMDI) which in actual fact should be the major service provider including in the mass induction of public servants.

Compliance levels within departments, in relation to public service and finance management legislation, have been somewhat mixed. Obviously this cannot be allowed to continue, even if we take into account the correct observation that auditing requirements at national and provincial levels have become more stringent. In this regard, the application of the performance agreement system particularly for senior management is crucial.

13.1 LOCAL GOVERNMENT

Programmes to improve the capacity of our local government system continue apace. Immediately after the March 2006 local government elections, induction Programmes were conducted, taking into account that 62% of the mayors are new.

What is of concern, though, is that in many of these municipalities, many vacancies remain or have emerged in senior management and the professions. For instance, in September last year, 27% of municipalities did not have municipal managers; in the Northwest Province, the vacancy rate at senior management level was over 50%; and in Mpumalanga only 1% of senior managers had concluded Key Performance Agreements.

We continue to respond to these challenges and will undertake all necessary tasks, informed by our Five Year Local Government Strategic Agenda, which includes hands-on assistance to municipalities by national and provincial structures, the deployment of skilled personnel including professional volunteers from the public, and strengthening the Ward Committees – 80% of which have been established across the country.

The Programme to align planning instruments across the spheres of government (that is, the National Spatial Development Perspective, Provincial Growth and Development Strategies and Integrated Development Plans) is continuing, with pilot projects for complete alignment being run in 13 of our districts and metros. These pilot projects should be completed by the end of this year.

It is a matter of proud record that over half of the districts and metros have held their Growth and Development Summits, and the rest intend to complete this process by the end of February. This will lay the basis for co-operation among all social partners in speeding up local economic development.

13.2 AsgiSA

To speed up the implementation of AsgiSA, over and above the multi-year Programmes announced in the recent past, government will this year:

- put in place measures that will facilitate the growth of industries which produce tradables for both the domestic and export markets, and have the potential to absorb large pools of semi-skilled workers;
- in line with the National Industrial Policy Framework which has now been completed, we will:





- intensify implementation of customised sector measures to facilitate investments in Business Process Outsourcing, tourism, bio-fuels and chemicals, and finalize practical Programmes for forestry and paper, clothing and textiles, metals and engineering;
- develop an overarching strategy to prioritise key interventions in mining and mineral beneficiation, agriculture and agro-processing, the white goods sector, creative industries, community and social services and pharmaceuticals;
- develop Programmes to facilitate investments in sectors along the supply chain for our infrastructure Programmes, including capital goods in ICT, transport and energy: with regard to energy, we will also expedite our work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear power generation, natural gas and the various forms of renewable sources of energy. With regard to communications, I am pleased to announce that the Department of Communications together with the mobile telephone companies and Telkom are finalising plans to address call termination rates this year for the benefit of all consumers. In addition, Telkom will apply a special low rate for international bandwidth to 10 development call centres each employing 1000 persons, as part of the effort to expand the BPO sector. These centres will be established in areas identified by government. The special rate will be directly comparable to those for the same service and capacity per month offered in any of the comparable countries.
- We will also take a variety of steps to improve competition in the economy, among others to lower the cost of doing business and promote investment, including practical introduction of the Regulatory Impact Assessment (RIA) system, developing high-speed national and international broadband capacity, finalising the plan to improve the capacity of the rail and port operators, and strengthening the effectiveness of our competition authorities.

13.3 TRAINING OF ARTISANS AND SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

The progress we have made with regard to the recapitalisation of Further Education and Training (FET) Colleges has created the possibility for us significantly to expand the number of available artisans. Starting this year, resources will be allocated to provide financial assistance to trainees in need, who enter these institutions. At the same time, we shall urgently resolve the issue of responsibilities between the national and provincial spheres in the management of the FET system. We do hope that our efforts to promote this area of opportunity will help send the message especially to our young people, that artisan skills are as critical for economic growth as other levels of qualification.

After intense interaction between government and leaders of our universities, agreement has been reached and decisions taken on the resources required to ensure that the skills in short supply are provided.

13.4 THE 2010 FIFA WORLD CUP

In carrying out this infrastructure and other Programmes, we will be informed by our commitment to ensure that the 2010 FIFA World Cup is the best ever. We wish in this regard to congratulate our Local Organising Committee (LOC) and other partners for the sterling work they are doing.



13.5 THE SECOND ECONOMY

Quite clearly, in order to ensure that all South Africans enjoy the happiness that comes with a growing economy, these and other measures will need to be accompanied by an intensified Programme to address challenges in the Second Economy. Because of this, during the course of this year, we will among other things:

- take further practical action to improve access to micro-finance including the reach of the Apex Fund (SAMAF) and the agricultural micro-credit fund (MAFISA);
- ensure the proper functioning of the Small Enterprises Development Agency, SEDA;
- process the Companies Bill, adopted for public comment by Cabinet as part of the battery of measures to reduce the regulatory burden on small, medium and micro-enterprises and to empower minority shareholders and employees;
- having surpassed the 10 000 target we set ourselves, we will increase the number of young people engaged in the National Youth Service by at least 20 000 through 18 of our departments which have already developed plans in this regard, enrol 30 000 young volunteers in community development initiatives, and employ 5 000 young people as part of the Expanded Public Works Programme in the maintenance of government buildings;
- intensify efforts to integrate youth development into the mainstream of government work, including a youth co-operatives Programme, and the ongoing efforts to link unemployed graduates with employment opportunities – and in this regard we wish to thank the many companies, public and private, big and small, which have responded in a splendid and practical manner to this initiative; and,
- start implementing the Communal Land Rights Act in order to improve economic utilisation of communal land, while at the same time expanding assistance such as irrigation, seeds and implements to small and co-operative farmers.

13.6 SOCIAL SECURITY

The economic Programmes to which we have referred form part of the concerted drive in which all of South Africa should engage in order to reduce the levels of poverty and inequality in our society. For us it is not a mere cliché to assert that the success of our democracy should and will be measured by the concrete steps we take to improve the quality of life of the most vulnerable in our society.

In order to improve on the social Programmes that we have implemented over the years, we aim this year to complete the work already started to reform our system of social security so that phased implementation can start as early as possible. A critical part of this reform will be the task of repairing a defect identified in the 2002 Report of the Committee of Inquiry into a Comprehensive System of Social Security in South Africa. This is that the contributory earnings-related pillar of our social security system is missing or unreliable for large numbers of working people. The principle guiding this approach is that, over and above social assistance provided through the government budget, we need to explore the introduction of an earnings-related contributory social security system that is informed by the principle of social solidarity.





This will mean that all South Africans will enjoy membership of a common, administratively efficient social insurance system, while those earning higher incomes will be able to continue contributing to private retirement and insurance schemes. In the discussions thus far conducted within government, consensus is emerging that elements of this system would need to include:

- continuation of the minimum benefits contained in our social grants system with the benefits paid through a modern administrative system;
- a wage subsidy for low-wage employees, possibly directed at first entrants into the job market, especially young people; and
- a social security tax to finance basic retirement savings, death, disability and unemployment benefits.

In addition, we have also started examining measures to reach vulnerable children over the age of 14 years. Our Programme in the social sector for this year will also include:

- speeding up of the construction of low-cost housing which will require the urgent establishment of a Special Purpose Vehicle to handle finances, piloting of the Land Use Management Bill and ensuring that the remaining elements of the much-delayed agreement with the private sector on low-cost housing are finalized;
- speeding up the implementation of the taxi recapitalisation project, implementing detailed plans for passenger rail and road transport including the Bus Rapid Transit System in the Metros and recapitalisation of Metrorail: and in this regard, let me take this opportunity to emphasise that government and our partners in SANTACO will not be bullied into abandoning the taxi recapitalisation project, and any attempts to undermine public order in pursuit of selfish interests will be dealt with accordingly;
- expanding access to Early Childhood Development both as part of the Programme to improve the general education system and as part of the Expanded Public Works Programme;
- expanding training and employment of nurses and social workers as well as auxiliaries, increasing the number of training institutions, improving the quality of training, and instituting a bursary system;
- continuing with the implementation of the remuneration dispensation for medical professionals, and providing additional resources further to improve the remuneration levels of teachers;
- ensuring the implementation, without further delay, of measures to reduce the cost of medicines; and
- continuing work to address especially the various non-natural causes of death in our society as well as lifestyle diseases, malaria, the various strains of TB, road accidents and violent crime.

13.7 HIV/AIDS

Government commits itself to intensify the campaign against HIV and AIDS and to improve its implementation of all elements of the comprehensive approach such as prevention, home-based care and treatment. We shall ensure that the partnerships built over the years are strengthened, and that our improved national comprehensive strategy against AIDS and sexually transmitted infections is finalized as soon as possible.





13.8 ACCESS TO WATER IN, SANITATION IN AND ELECTRICITY

This year we shall complete concrete plans on implementation of the final stages of our Programmes to meet the targets for universal access to water in 2008, sanitation in 2010 and electricity in 2012. We shall also finalize the strategy and Programmes to address matters of social cohesion, including the comprehensive and integrated anti-poverty strategy we have mentioned, as well as address issues pertaining to national unity, value systems and identity.

13.9 SAFETY AND SECURITY

All these efforts, Madame Speaker and Chairperson, must go hand in hand with a sustained drive to improve community safety and security.

What is required is effective organisation, mobilisation and leadership of the mass of law-enforcement, intelligence and corrections officers, and functionaries of the justice system. The overwhelming majority of these public servants have proven over and over again in actual practice that they are prepared to put their lives on the line and to sacrifice even the little quality time they could have with their families, in defence of our freedom and our security.

In addition to the many ongoing Programmes that we have been implementing, government will this year:

- continue to improve the remuneration and working conditions of the police, and start the process of further expanding the personnel of the South African Police Service to bring their total number to over 180 000 within three years, and ensure optimal utilisation of the electronic monitoring and evaluation system that has just been introduced;
- bring to full capacity the forensic laboratories which have been equipped with the latest technology, and ensure the optimum utilisation of the finger-print database – indeed, many of the recent successes in solving serious crime incidents have been facilitated by these systems;
- bring the operations of the Department of Home Affairs to full capacity, by filling vacant posts, improving systems and implementing other recommendations of the Task Team that has been working with the Minister to improve the work of this vital institution;
- implement the recommendations of the Khampepe Commission on the mandate and operations of the Directorate of Special Operations (Scorpions);
- start the process of further modernising the systems of the South African Revenue Services, especially in respect of border control, and improve the work of the inter-departmental co-ordinating structures in this regard;
- intensify intelligence work with regard to organised crime, building on the successes that have been achieved in the last few months in dealing with cash-in-transit heists, drug trafficking and poaching of game and abalone;
- utilize to maximum effect the new technology that has been provided to the justice system and generally improve management of the courts and the prosecution service, in order massively to reduce case backlogs;
- finalize remaining elements of measures to transform the judiciary and improve its functioning, in consultation with this eminent institution of our democracy;





- implement the Programmes decided upon to build more corrections facilities and realise the objectives of the White Paper on Corrections;
- continue with the processes further to capacitate our intelligence agencies, and ensure that at all times they operate within the framework of our Constitution and laws; and
- improve our analysis of crime trends to improve our performance with regard both to crime prevention and crime combating. In this regard, we must respond to the cold reality that, as in other countries, the overwhelming majority of violent crimes against the person occur in the most socio-economically deprived areas of our country and require strong and sustained community interventions focused on crime prevention.

As we have already said, these and other measures will succeed only if we build an enduring partnership in actual practice within our communities and between the communities and the police, to make life more and more difficult for the criminals.

In this regard, we are heartened by the resolve shown by leaders of the business and religious communities further to strengthen such partnerships on the ground, and to give of their time and resources to strengthen the fight against crime. Government will play its part to ensure that these partnerships actually work, and that we all act together to discharge the responsibility to protect our citizens.

I should mention in this regard that the Ministry of Safety and Security and the Police Service are working on proposals further to improve the functioning and effectiveness of the vitally important Community Police Forums.

13.10 OPTIMISING EFFICIENCY

Further to improve its service to the people, government should optimise its capacity and organisational efficiency. To achieve these objectives, we will during the course of this year:

- strengthen monitoring and evaluation capacity across all the spheres, including training of managers responsible for the implementation of this system;
- complete, within the next 18 months, legislation on a single public service and relevant norms and standards, remuneration policy and matters pertaining to medical aid and pensions;
- intensify outreach and awareness on issues of national spatial development, while increasing the number of municipalities involved in the harmonisation of planning instruments across the three spheres;
- conduct capacity assessments and implement interventions in Provincial Departments responsible for local government, as well as the Offices of the Premiers, while continuing to improve the capacity of our national departments;
- while intensifying the public sector and national anti-corruption campaign, complete by the end of the year the process further to improve the effectiveness of our anti-corruption strategies for all spheres of government;
- roll out the Batho Pele campaign at local government level, intensify outreach activities including izimbizo and set up more Multi-Purpose Community Centres beyond the 90 currently operational; and,



- further capacitate and provide more support to the institution of traditional leadership.

**Summary compiled from press statement issued by: “The Presidency”
9 February 2007**

ANNEXURE B

State of the Province Address: Intensifying the Fight against Poverty: An Action Plan for Shared Growth by Mr E Rasool, Premier of the Western Cape.

The address focused on the following:

1. An Action Plan for Shared Growth

The Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS) will be finalized and implemented. The PGDS is the gravitational point of coherence for the whole of local government and it is intelligently reflective of national government's policy direction in the National Spatial Development Perspective.

2. The Millennium Development Goals

The Millennium Development Goals in 2014 will ensure a different Western Cape by 2010 when the Soccer World Cup takes place. The struggle against poverty will be intensified. The point of departure is that while prosperity is the best antidote to poverty, we need simultaneously to build prosperity through AsgiSA and protect our citizens from the worst manifestations and symptoms of poverty.

3. Climate Change

The status quo report on climate change in the Western Cape reaches the following chilling conclusion:

The Western Cape faces the real possibility of socio-economic impoverishment as a result of climate change over and above the negative impact on poverty alleviation Programmes.

Agriculture Minister Cobus Dowry warns that because our fruit trees require cold temperatures in winter, any further warming would potentially destroy this part of our agriculture economy. The Provincial Government will act in the following priority areas:

- To intensify the search for alternative water sources;
- The Agriculture Department will ensure that 70% of farmers have adopted water saving techniques towards a 100% target by 2014;
- The urgency to eradicate alien vegetation, necessitating the need to use the law against private property owners to remove alien vegetation;
- The cost of flooding in the Eden District due to climate change was R600 million. Some of these costs are avoidable and the Spatial Development Planning frameworks must now enforce respect for estuaries, river catchments and coastlines and flood lines:





- The growing population and economy demand more electricity. Demand-side measures must be complemented by new sources of energy. Two Gas Powered stations will be coming on stream with a total of 1000 mega-watts of electricity in Mossel Bay and Atlantis from the middle of this year. We have very little choice but to welcome the announcement of a second nuclear power station in the Western Cape to stabilize supply. By 2014, 15% of energy should be supplied through wind, solar, wave and natural gas sources.

4 World Cup 2010

World Cup 2010 is the primary catalyst to radically reshape the Western Cape in the image of AsgiSA. It is an opportunity to accelerate key development investments that can be used in the fight against poverty and under-development. Hence, the R2.7 billion investment into the stadium is regarded merely as bait to attract at least another R7- to R8-billion in linked public investments for transport and infrastructure.

5. Property Development

The Western Cape government and the municipalities in the province are significant property owners. If they approach their assets from a strategic business perspective, they can use these resources as advantage to achieve a host of developmental objectives simultaneously.

Provincial government identified strategically located properties that lend themselves to the delivery of social (rental) housing and gap housing. Potential sites were identified in George (and other towns in the province).

6. Human Settlements

Housing expenditure, since 1994 increased to R300m per annum in 2004. This has jumped to R530m since 2004. The challenges remain daunting.

7. Public Transport

The Provincial Growth and Development Strategy highlighted integrated transport as a path-breaker for us because of its economic, environmental and social effects.

An Integrated Fare Management System, which is at the heart of an integrated public transport system, will allow commuters to switch between transport modes with one ticket. This will be piloted in practice before the end of 2008.

The Western Cape Government launched the taxi re-capitalization Programme.

8. Crime, Drugs and Gangs

Violent contact crime is decreasing, but 80% of all violent crimes (murder, assault and rape) occur among people who know each other. "Society must realize that we cannot abdicate our moral responsibility to the government or the police. We cannot win with the police what we have lost in the soul of our people."

There was an increase in house-breaking, car-breaking and muggings to pay for drugs. By 2010, "we want our youth playing football, **not doing drugs** or involved in gangs, but we must embark on our concrete plan of action now already in 2007":

A drug Rehabilitation Centre in Oudtshoorn will service the South Cape and the Karoo..





9. EPWP

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is a key Programme in the fight against poverty and unemployment. The original target of 120 000 jobs created will be ratcheted up to 170 000 to be attained by 2010, focusing particularly on the areas of Infrastructure and the Social Sectors. Programmes identified for the drive in the Infrastructure Sector will create a minimum of 20,000 work opportunities in 2008, which will include major road construction and housing projects throughout the Province;

The effort in the Social Sector will include the Community Home Based Carers to a further 1,800 opportunities, the Early Childhood Development Programme to a further 7,000 opportunities and Programmes in Community Safety and other health care services

10. Scarce Skills

The Achilles heel of rising prosperity and growth is the skills deficit, particularly in fast growing sectors such as construction, engineering, surveying, and related artisan trades. Provincial Government initiated a dialogue with all five universities (CPUT, UCT, UNISA, US and UWC) in the Province. A Memorandum of Understanding signed by the Vice-Chancellors and the premier.

Provincial Government is also driving the repositioning of the FET colleges, the increase in the number of focus schools, and the expansion of the Early Childhood Development band. All of these are designed to make the Western Cape a premier learning region in South Africa.

11. Home for All

Integrated human settlements must be central to the objective of social cohesion and solidarity.

The Language Transformation Plan focuses on children getting the best possible preparation for the future by benefiting from at least 6 years of mother tongue based bilingual education.

Over 20 000 youths are enrolled in volunteer based Programmes to monitor shebeens, provide support to people coming out of rehabilitation facilities, providing home-based care for those with HIV and Aids, assisting social workers in community-based projects, are active in community policing forums, School Governing Bodies, health committees, and so forth. A web-based portal, that will enable ordinary citizens with a lot of goodwill, skills and sympathy to make their contributions in a safe, constructive and structured manner, will be established.

12. Governance

The Programme of action outlined above cannot be achieved without the commitment and cooperation of local government. The various Intergovernmental Forums will be used to drive this agenda in the fight against poverty and to ensure the alignment of the PGDS and IDPs.